

21世纪高等学校专业英语系列规划教材

旅游



专业英语教程

孙冰主编



清华大学出版社·北京交通大学出版社

内 容 简 介

本教材共 10 个单元,全方位地介绍了与旅游相关的基本概念和信息,所涵盖的内容除了传统的旅游之外,还包括工业旅游、农业旅游、校园旅游等。本教材每个单元包括 A、B 两组对话,一篇阅读和课后练习,内容从第 1 单元到第 10 单元自成体系,贯穿始终,课后练习包括音标、词汇、阅读理解、回答问题及英汉、汉英翻译。

本教材适合旅游、英语等相关专业的学生使用,同时也适用于有志于从事旅游行业的其他人士。

本书封面贴有清华大学出版社防伪标签,无标签者不得销售。

版权所有,侵权必究。侵权举报电话:010-62782989 13501256678 13801310933

图书在版编目(CIP)数据

旅游专业英语教程/孙冰主编. —北京:清华大学出版社;北京交通大学出版社, 2010.8

ISBN 978-7-5121-0238-5

I. ① 旅… II. ① 孙… III. ① 旅游-英语-教材 IV. ① H31

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字(2010)第 161665 号

责任编辑:张利军 特邀编辑:易娜

出版发行:清华大学出版社 邮编:100084 电话:010-62776969 <http://www.tup.com.cn>

北京交通大学出版社 邮编:100044 电话:010-51686414 <http://press.bjtu.edu.cn>

印刷者:环球印刷(北京)有限公司

经 销:全国新华书店

开 本:185×243 印张:13.25 字数:380千字

版 次:2010年8月第1版 2010年8月第1次印刷

书 号:ISBN 978-7-5121-0238-5/H·212

印 数:1~4 000册 定价:22.00元

本书如有质量问题,请向北京交通大学出版社质监组反映。对您的意见和批评,我们表示欢迎和感谢。
投诉电话:010-51686043, 51686008; 传真:010-62225406; E-mail: press@bjtu.edu.cn。

前 言



本教材容纳了旅游各方面的知识，全方位地介绍了与旅游相关的基本概念和信息，所涵盖的内容除了传统的旅游之外，还包括工业旅游、农业旅游、校园旅游等，并配有生动的图片。全书共 10 个单元，每单元包括 A、B 两组对话，一篇阅读和课后练习。本教材的内容从第 1 单元到第 10 单元自成体系，贯穿始终；课后练习包括音标、词汇、阅读理解、回答问题及英汉、汉英翻译。

本教材文字优美、地道，通俗易懂，在内容上理论和实践相结合。本教材适用于在校的旅游、英语等专业的学生，也适用于有志于从事旅游行业的其他人士。

本教材贯彻最新的教学理念，鼓励主动学习，让学生通过填写音标、讨论问题、搜索网络资源，了解与旅游相关的各类知识，提供旅游发展的各类信息，拓展学生的思维和实践能力。针对英语解说介绍旅游景点的实际需要，本教材安排了一些景点的汉语介绍和相关的英语译文。

本教材的另一特点是收录了国内外的旅游合同，注意到旅游行业是一个在法律上容易引发纠纷的行业。以前的旅游专业教学用书没有这方面的内容。这样可以使学生在学期间就熟悉这些词汇，以及法律条款和行业条例。这也是本教材的一个创新。

本教材的编者还注意到目前社会上已经大量存在专门的饭店英语教科书，因此没有大量收集这方面的材料。但是针对实际使用的特点，专门收录了一些真实的东西方菜单，希望读者熟悉这些菜单的翻译。同时，编者专门根据菜单翻译五花八门、意见不一的现实，编写了一段短文，反映这种情况，希望对读者有所启发。

本教材在课文和练习部分侧重于英语和汉语的翻译。这是因为说到底，英文导游就是把自己知道的东西用英文表达出来。这也是本教材的一个特色。

本教材的编者还从美国学生旅游团的实践中，了解了外国人在中国旅游想了解的事情，并在练习中列出，帮助学生为应付旅游中可能问及的问题做准备。从教

师、学生和旅游者三个方面考虑问题的角度也是本教材的特色之一。

本教材体现了以学生为中心的特点。练习部分没有给出所有答案，这样可以给学生以探索的空间。最后一个练习题目更是结合了现代科技发展的趋势，要求学生上网查阅相关资料。这是编者向美国学校学习的一种方法，也是国内教科书编写中的一种创新。

由于作者知识水平有限，不妥之处敬请广大读者指出，此处谨表谢意。

编者
2010年8月



Unit One	Development of Tourism	(1)
Unit Two	Tours of Sites of Chinese Revolution	(16)
Unit Three	Tours of Sites of Cultural Heritage	(28)
Unit Four	Tours of Sites of Natural Heritage	(44)
Unit Five	Tours of Sites of Industries	(56)
Unit Six	Tours of Sites of Agriculture	(70)
Unit Seven	Tours of Sites of Entertainment	(85)
Unit Eight	Tours of Famous Cities	(100)
Unit Nine	Tours of Shopping Places	(116)
Unit Ten	Tours of Residential Quarters	(133)
Glossary	.....	(149)
Appendix A	.....	(155)
Appendix B	.....	(158)
Appendix C	.....	(168)
Appendix D	.....	(175)
Appendix E	.....	(184)
References	.....	(206)

Unit One

Development of Tourism



Dialogues



Dialogue A



- A:** What do you think of tourism?
- B:** It is one of the most important economic activities of modern times.
- A:** Some people just travel in the country where they live, but others travel abroad. How do you call these different travels?
- B:** The former is called internal or domestic tourism, while the latter international tourism.
- A:** What places do people usually travel to?
- B:** It depends. But generally people travel to places that are different from their usual residence, as they get bored with their usual living places and want to see something different. You know that is human nature.
- A:** But do they have some other purposes besides their aspiration for something different?
- B:** Sure. Some people travel for health reasons. They travel to places with good hospitals, doctors or medical equipments, or a good environment that is conducive to some rapid recovery from illness, for example, places with hot springs, mineral water, sunshine, forest and what not. All these things are good for health.
- A:** But so far as I know, some people are in good health, and they travel to places like Macao, Las Vegas, Atlantic City, or Monte Carlo. What do they do there?
- B:** Oh, they go there for gambling. As it is prohibited in many countries or regions,

gamblers then swarm to those cities you have just mentioned for the purpose.

A: I've heard that many people go on traveling to dangerous places. Will you tell me why they have decided to do so?

B: That's called adventure tourism. They need something exciting, like mountaineering, spelunking or hiking. They travel through deserts, marshlands, even arctic areas.

A: Some people travel to the country. What's that called?

B: That's agritourism. Urban people want a change of life, so they go to farms, looking at plants, picking fruits or vegetables, fishing, hunting, feeding animals, eating simple farm food and living in cottages, just for fun, for fresh air and a change of life for a few days.

A: But I wonder whether the disabled people or those inactive people would ever travel or get the excitement of travel?

B: They are not excluded from the enjoyment of travel. You may have heard of armchair tourism or virtual tourism, haven't you?

A: Do you mean tours such as enjoyed by Jules Verne? He was virtually homebound, but he published many books of science fiction, tours underwater, into out space, and even described in great detail such wonderful means of transportation like submarines, helicopters long before these machines were invented. Probably it is based on his imagination that later on scientists and engineers produced them. Nowadays, some of us may be too busy to physically move away from our usual residence for a few days, but we can still have the joy that tourism can bring to us by watching TV, reading travel books or listening to travel stories, and then isn't it a kind of spiritual tourism?

B: You are right there.

A: I have learnt quite a lot from you. Next time I see you, I may have more questions to ask you about tourism.

B: You're welcome anytime.

Dialogue B



(C = clerk, G = guest)

C: Good evening. This is room reservation. May I help you?

G: Yes, I'd like to book a room, please.

- C: OK. For what time, sir?
- G: For December 1st.
- C: How long will you stay?
- G: About three days.
- C: What kind of room would you like, sir?
- G: I'd like a single room for myself. By the way, What's the rate of a single room?
- C: One kind is 40 US dollars a night. Another kind is 60 US dollars a night. Which one do you prefer?
- G: The second one is OK.
- C: Would you please give me your name and your passport number?
- G: Sure. It's Dan Millison and the number is 03456.
- C: How do you spell your name, please?
- G: D-A-N, Dan and M-I-L-L-I-S-O-N, Millison.
- C: Thanks. What's your phone number?
- G: 0035-2-7878456.
- C: What time do you expect to arrive, sir?
- G: Let me see, oh, at about 7 a.m.
- C: OK. That's settled. My name is Zhou Wei and I'm looking forward to seeing you at that time.

Reading Material



Tourism is undoubtedly a thriving business in today's world. The term refers to any travel away from a person's usual place of residence for a period of more than a day, mostly for pleasure or recreation, and usually to multiple destinations. Tourism statistics, however, generally include people traveling for business or health, or to visit friends and relatives, as all those staying in hotels are not identified in general for their purposes.

As defined above, tourism or travel industry came into being in prehistoric times when people then had to travel to different places in order to hunt food or escape from animals. On their way for life, they might be invited to stay in others' caves or huts, where they shared some safety, food or warmth if a fire was also shared. This might be the beginning of

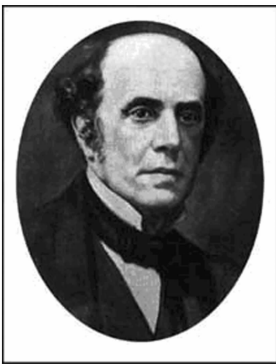
tourism over the world.

Then some people saw the need of houses for receiving travelers, and they opened and kept inns for the purpose. To make more money, they tried their best to make their guests feel comfortable with their food and service, so hospitality played a very important role in tourism.

The Old and the New Testaments recorded people traveling and staying at inns. The Egyptians, Greeks and Romans traveled a lot in their exploration and conquest, and they had to use lodging places, some with and some without food and other amenities. The first American inn opened in Jamestown, Virginia in the early 1600s when British convicts started to settle in the American colony.

Along with the further human exploration into inner lands, more and more trails and roads appeared, and so were inns and hotels. The keepers made great efforts to improve their services; bathrooms were added, and later on so were laundries. Rooms were carpeted, and business services provided so that guests could deliver a telegram or make a phone call without leaving the hotel.

While tourism in a modern sense was generally attributed in the west to Thomas Cook, the English man who put together the first tour in 1841. The firm of Thomas Cook and Sons has ever remained one of the best-known names in the tourist industry.



Nevertheless, the 20th century witnessed the fastest development of tourism when productivity was raised to such a high level and when people had some disposable income— income more than that for clothing, food, shelter and taxes, so the laborers could have more time and money for leisure and entertainment, and on the other hand modern facilities of transportation have increased people's mobility. What's more is tourists could have more comfort and convenience as almost every hotel room was equipped with a TV set and a radio. Quite a number of hotels provide their guests with access to the Internet.

Tourism is divided into international one and domestic one. The former refers to travels from one country to another, while the latter to those from one place to another within a tourist's own country. The total expenditure of tourists from both home and abroad can be enormous. According to the tourism statistics in Beijing for the 2005 Spring Festival holiday period—seven days in all, the total expenditure exceeded 1.8 billion yuan.

China's domestic tourism has been geared up to its holiday economy, a special term for

its three long holidays: Spring Festival holiday, Labor Day holiday and National Day holiday. In these three periods, each lasting for seven days, tens of millions of people, workers, students, farmers, all aboard trains, long-distance buses or planes heading for home or tourist resorts. Some of them even travel to foreign countries for a change.

The development of tourism has the multiplier effect. Tourists not only spend money on traveling, but also on hotel accommodations and shopping. All these services provide job chances: tour guides, porters, drivers, cooks, service workers and what not.

However, tourist sites should not be overtaxed. When too many tourists swarm to a site, they pollute the site with garbage: empty tins, paper scraps, oil stains. They also create noise and sometimes cause a shortage of material supply, disturbing the local residents, who may in turn lodge complaints to the local government for overdeveloped tourism.

But all in all, the development of tourism, if properly guided and handled, may bring economic prosperity to a region or a country, especially when it is required to quit pollution on its way of economic transition to a sustainable economic development; then tourism should by all means be given priority.



1 *think of and think about*

think of: consider or take into account (before a plan or an idea is offered)

He thought of going to the west to show his paces. 他想到赴西部去一展才干。

think about: consider something, a plan or an idea (usually offered already)

He thought about the advantages and disadvantages of the teacher's proposal that he go to the west after his graduation. 他考虑着老师对他毕业后去西部的建议。

2 *economic and economical*

economic: of economics

We have to further push forward our economic reform. 我们必须深化经济改革。

economical: not wasteful, careful of use of money, energy, etc.

He is an economical person, and has saved up quite a lot of money for his children's education. 他是个节俭的人, 已为孩子们的教育攒下很多钱。

3 *travel and trip*

travel: act of moving from one place to another, usually a long distance

He opened a travel agency to help those who have disposable money and time for vacations abroad. 他开了一家旅行社,帮助那些有金钱和闲暇到国外旅游的人。

trip: a journey to a place not too far away

His trip to the Western Hills is a memorable one, during which he met one of his former classmates. 他的西山之行令人回味,那次旅行让他见到了他以前的一个同学。

4 **trip and excursion**

trip: a journey to a place not too far away

excursion: a trip usually in a group for pleasure

Their excursion to the Western Hills was ruined by an unexpected storm.
他们的西山之行让不速风雨毁了。

5 **excursion and expedition**

excursion: a trip usually in a group for pleasure

expedition: a travel or voyage to a distant place with a definite purpose, usually with danger and risk

The Northern Expedition Army won one battle after another in its initial days.
出征刚开始时,北伐军打了一个又一个的胜仗。

6 **travel and journey**

travel: act of moving from one place to another, usually a long distance

journey: trip, especially with the process or distance usually short in mind

During the journey, he kept reading newspapers to kill time and boredom.
旅途中,他靠读报打发时光,驱除无聊。

7 **later and latter**

later: after a fixed or pointed time

Later he became a member of the organization. 后来他成为了该组织的成员。

latter: of the one close to the modified object, as opposed to the former

The latter is widely used in industry, while the former in agriculture.
前者广泛用于工业,后者用于农业。

8 **health product and healthy person**

health product: product that is produced for improving the health of the consumer

He looks much younger than he really is as he regularly uses some health food products.
由于他常用保健食品,因此看上去比他的实际年龄要年轻得多。

healthy person: person who is in good health

A healthy person may not use health products, but exercises regularly, takes a balanced

diet, rests enough and keeps being in a good mood.

健康人可能不用保健品, 而是经常锻炼, 饮食平衡, 有足够的休息, 保持心情愉快。

- 9 **Macao**: a small Chinese city close to the west of Hong Kong and the south of Zhuhai, which is famous for its entertainment business, especially for its gambling business

Las Vegas: a city built in desert in Nevada, USA, which is well known for its gambling business

Atlantic city: a city in the southeast of New Jersey, which is famous for its entertainment business

Monte Carlo: a resort and entertainment place in the Mediterranean, famous for its gambling business

10 **gamble and bet**

gamble: play games of risk for money

He lost all his money accumulated over years gambling at cards.

他失去了多年赌牌累积的钱。

bet: take chance on an event whose result is uncertain

He bet he would pass the examination. 他打赌他将通过考试。

11 **former and formal**

former: of the one which is farther away to the modifier, as opposed to the latter

The former president delivered a speech on his days in power.

前总统发表了一篇关于他当权时的讲话。

formal: in a serious manner, as opposed to casual

He is in a formal dress on his friend's wedding ceremony. 在朋友的婚礼上, 他着正装。

12 **prohibit and forbid**

prohibit: forbid somebody to do something especially by rules or regulations

Visitors are prohibited from taking photos in the exhibition hall.

展览大厅内禁止游客拍照。

forbid: order somebody not to do something

Drivers from outside are forbidden to park their vehicles in this institute's exclusive parking lot. 外部车辆严禁在本所专用停车区停放。

13 **for the purpose of and for the sake of**

for the purpose of: that which one means to do or get

What is the purpose of your going to the United States? 你去美国目的何在?

for the sake of: because of the interest in or desire for the benefit or welfare

He worked very hard for the sake of his family. 为了家庭, 他努力工作。

14 swarm to: move to a place in a large number

Bathers and swimmers swarm to the Mediterranean each year for the sunshine there.
沐浴者和游泳者每年涌往地中海。

15 Jules Verne: a French science-fiction writer (1828 – 1905), whose science-fiction novels include *Five Weeks in a Balloon* (1863), *Twenty Thousand Leagues under the Sea* (1870) and *Around the World in 80 Days* (1873) and anticipate many scientific inventions

16 lodging place: room or rooms provided for a lodger to live in

17 Thomas Cook: Thomas Cook (22 November 1808 – 18 July 1892) of Melbourne, Derbyshire, founded the travel agency that is now Thomas Cook AG.

18 multiplier effect: the indirect benefit or profit being several times higher than the direct benefit or profit from an undertaking

The multiplier effect of tourism is great as hotels, restaurants, shops, businesses related to its service will all benefit a lot from its development. 旅游业的乘数效应非常大, 因为旅店、饭店、商场和相关行业都从旅游业的发展中受益匪浅。

19 amenities: things, circumstances, surroundings that make life easier and more comfortable
People living in this town make a lot of exchanges of amenities. (They exchange friendly greetings.) 该城居民见面总是相互致意。

20 desert and dessert

desert: [ˈdezət] *n.* a barren place usually covered by sand

dessert: [diˈzɜ:t] *n.* any sweet dish served at the end of a meal

21 refer to: (what is said) speak of, allude to, followed by a noun or gerund

The USA refers to the United States of America.

22 in turn and in return

in turn: alternately (of two persons doing things one after the other)

The treated water first flows into a tank for storage, and then in turn, more untreated water shall pump into the treatment plant for treatment. 处理后的水首先注入一个贮存箱, 接着更多的未处理的水将注入处理厂进行处理。

in return: as a payment; reciprocally

He gave her a hairpin for her birthday present; in return, she presented him with a sweater she had knitted for him. 他送给她一个发夹作为她的生日礼物; 反过来, 她送给了他一件她编织的毛衣。

23 in turn and by turns

In turn is more frequently used in cases where two persons are involved, though sometimes where more persons may be engaged when it means they do a thing in

succession, but the action may not be rotated or repeated, while *by turns* is used in cases where more than two persons are involved and repetition or rotation is an element in the activity.

They queued up for the physical check-up in turn. 他们排队, 轮流体检。

They recited the poem by turns. 他们依序背诵诗歌。



• Exercises

I Try to read the following words and expressions taken from the text and fill the brackets with the corresponding phonetic symbols. You may look them up in your dictionary and pay attention to the relation between spellings and phonetic symbols.

thriving	[]	<i>a.</i>	prosperous
refer to	[]	<i>v.</i>	to talk about
residence	[]	<i>n.</i>	a place where one lives
recreation	[]	<i>n.</i>	things one does to relax
multiple	[]	<i>a.</i>	many
destination	[]	<i>n.</i>	the place one goes to
identify	[]	<i>v.</i>	name somebody who he/she is
hospitality	[]	<i>n.</i>	friendly behavior towards a guest
Old Testament	[]	<i>n.</i>	the first part of the Bible
New Testament	[]	<i>n.</i>	the part of the Bible that deals with the life and teachings of Jesus Christ and Christianity in the early church
lodging	[]	<i>a.</i>	living
amenity	[]	<i>n.</i>	usually used in plural, things or facilities such as for sports or shopping that make people's life convenient or easy
productivity	[]	<i>n.</i>	rate at which goods are produced
disposable	[]	<i>a.</i>	left after what is necessary for
facility	[]	<i>n.</i>	buildings, services or equipments for a certain purpose

accommodations	[]	<i>n.</i>	place such a building or room for people to live in
swarm	[]	<i>v.</i>	move in a large number and in a busy way
multiplier effect	[]	<i>n.</i>	result which is several times more than what is intended
scrap	[]	<i>n.</i>	a very small piece
sustainable	[]	<i>a.</i>	of something that can be used continuously

II Give definitions to the given words.

1. How do you define tourism? What kinds of people are also counted as tourists?
2. What is the difference between international tourism and domestic tourism?
3. What is a summer resort?
4. What do accommodations mean?
5. What does laundry mean?
6. On what day is Chinese Spring Festival?
7. How do you explain holiday economy?
8. What is the multiplier effect?
9. How do you describe a thing overtaxed?
10. How do you understand a sustainable economic development?

III Discuss the following questions with your classmates.

1. How did tourism begin in prehistoric days?
2. Why has tourism been developing rapidly in recent years?
3. Why do people travel?
4. Why do people say that the Chinese people are known for their hospitality?
5. What is the difference between business travel and recreational travel?
6. What figures on tourist expenditures are relatively accurate?
7. What figures on tourist expenditures are problematic?
8. What cities in China are visited most and why?
9. Why is the multiplier effect one of the principal reasons for the development of tourism?
10. What measures should we take to control over-taxation of tourism?

IV Circle the letter before the best choice of the four alternatives.

1. Many people travel to Monte Carlo for _____.

- A. sightseeing B. sports C. health reasons D. gambling
2. Spelunking can be an activity of _____.
- A. agritourism B. adventure tourism
C. cultural tourism D. space tourism
3. Northern Europeans go to the Mediterranean mostly for _____.
- A. sea water B. its scenery C. sightseeing D. sunshine
4. Thomas Cook was _____.
- A. American B. British C. French D. Spanish
5. Travel away from a person's usual place of residence for more than _____ hours is referred to as tourism.
- A. 12 B. 6 C. 24 D. 48
6. A place or area to which a tourist travels is called a _____.
- A. tourist destination B. resort C. convention D. hotel
7. _____ enables people to travel.
- A. Disposable income B. Income
C. Time D. Spare time
8. _____ refers to the number of times which money originating from tourism is spent in a tourist destination area.
- A. Disposable income B. Multiplier effect
C. Time D. Income
9. Many people travel in order to educate themselves in line with the old precept that travel is _____.
- A. enjoyable B. vision-broadening
C. fun D. joyful
10. _____ provide tourists with places to stay in and meals.
- A. Accommodations B. Commotions
C. Accommodation D. Commotion

V Match the words or expressions in the following columns.

A	B
ETA	收据
ETD	账单
Consulate General	总领馆
China entry card	海关申报单

customs declaration form	中国入境卡
bill	预计离开时间
receipt	预计到达时间
jetlag	免税
checked luggage	托运的行李
antiques	皮带扣
duty free	长途喷气机航空旅行带来的不适
boarding card	登机卡
belt buckle	古董

VI Match the following phrases in their proper forms with the sentences below the square.

conducive to	in good health	so far as	and what not	swarm to
for fun	in great detail	refer to	come into being	escape from
attribute to	be geared up to	in return		

1. He is now more than 60 years old, but still _____.
2. Balanced diet is _____ good health.
3. I've got a lot of presents, a notebook, a pen _____.
4. They work for money, but I work _____ as I do not have to worry about my life.
5. To let me know more about the accident, you should describe it _____.
6. He gave me a beautiful birthday present, and _____ I sent him a hand-made greeting card to express my thanks.
7. We _____ the great achievement of China's reform and opening to the outside world _____ the leadership of the Party.
8. Education should _____ the need of society.
9. He asked me when the TV _____.
10. He _____ the enemy's pursuit.
11. Tsunami _____ the destructive tidal waves caused by an earthquake in the ocean.
12. _____ I know, she failed the exam due to her illness.
13. They _____ the newly opened shopping mall for the goods that would be sold at a discount.

- VII** Translate the following passage into Chinese with a view to knowing something about the practice in tourism.

How to Apply for a Tourist Group Visa

A tourist group visa is one issued to a tourist group organized by the travel agency. The group comprises at least five members who must travel together both in and out of a destination country. The Tourist Group Visa is evidenced on the Group Tourist Form instead of on the individual passport; therefore when the group enters its destination country at the customs the individual passports have to be collected for verification together with the tourist visa.

As for how to apply for a tourist visa, the applicant must either come in person or entrust other persons or a visa service/travel agent to apply on his/her behalf. The documents with application include visa notification from any head office of the authorized travel agent or service, in case of a travel group bound for China the entrusted services are the China Travel Service (CTS), China International Travel Service (CITS), China Youth Travel Service (CYTS), Chinese National Tourist Bureau, or any Chinese Provincial Tourist Bureau, a completed Tourist Group Visa Form in triplicate. If there is any blank unfilled on the name list, draw a straight line from the left corner down to the right corner in blue or black ink. There must be also the original passports which have been arranged in an order consistent with that appearing on the Group Tourist Visa Form.

As for fees for the matter, for American passport holders, they have to hand in \$40 per person and while for non-American passport holders, each has to pay \$24. Normally it takes 4 working days for the processing procedure. For express service, \$15 per person for 1 working day processing in addition, \$10 per person for 2-3 days processing will be charged. The payment may be done by Visa, Master Card, Money Order, Cashier's Check, Company Check or Cash. Personal checks are not workable. A China-bound tourist group should make the check or money order payable to Chinese Embassy.

By the way, any person with mental disorder, leprosy, AIDS, venereal diseases, contagious tuberculosis or other such infectious diseases shall not be permitted to enter a country.

- VIII** Translate the following from Chinese into English and at the same time try to get familiar with some facts concerning tourism.

A

只有当一些必需的条件具备时,才可能发生旅游这样的经济活动。这些条件包括:闲钱、闲时间和旅游需要的基础设施。闲钱指除了用于生活必需品以外剩余的钱;闲时间指除了用于日常工作和休息之外的业余时间;而旅游必需的基础设施包括住宿和运输条件:旅店、饭店、飞机、机场、火车、车站、公共汽车、出租汽车等。这些条件缺一不可。当然,旅游目的地安定的社会和良好的秩序也是不可缺少的。

从旅行者个人来讲,他要有良好的健康状况和旅行的意愿。有些人想旅游,但是身体条件不允许他外出;有些人身体好,但是懒得动,也不会去旅游;还有人舍不得花钱,也不会去旅游;还有人因为从媒体上看到旅游目的地人山人海,难以入住,或者恐怖主义分子对旅游目的地袭击的消息而裹足不前。

旅游者和旅游这些术语直到1937年才在国联(联合国前身)得到使用。旅游指离开自己日常居所超过24小时的旅行。

19世纪文化旅游发展成为健康游和休闲游。欧洲旅游者出于健康目的前往温暖的南欧及有利于健康的矿物质水胜地。休闲旅游是英国人的发明。英国是第一个工业化的国家,生产力的提高使得人们有了空闲的时间。随着生产力的不断提高,不仅资本家可以出去旅游,而且工人们也逐渐有了闲暇和闲钱。尤其是中产阶级的出现,加速了休闲旅游的兴旺。

B

旅游促销有几个方面。一是促销旅行社。如果不进行促销,在人们心目中,这个旅行社的信誉就低于那些脍炙人口的旅行社的声誉。二是促销旅行服务。良好的服务是旅行者追求的目标,当然光有媒体的宣传是不够的,最好的宣传是回头客的宣传,也就是人们常说的有口皆碑的声誉。三是价格的宣传。对于绝大多数顾客来说,省下的就是挣下的。当然也不是说越便宜越好,这也是一个性价比的问题。四是旅游市场的宣传。这个宣传既有旅游目的地自己做的宣传,也有旅行社做的宣传,还有专门的旅游作家做的宣传。旅游作家是一个独特的团体,他们以写游记为生,为专门的旅游杂志和一般杂志的旅游专栏提供稿件。有些还为广告公司提供言简意赅的宣传词,这些词如果写得好的话,许多会成为传世之作。有的作家不经意间写小说、诗歌、散文等,优美的描写成就了许多原本名不见经传的小地方,如湖南的凤凰城、云南的香格里拉等。还有一些地方则因为电影电视剧的拍摄成了它们免费的广告宣传,一夜之间,声名鹊起,如乔家大院、山东和浙江的几个电影城等。

旅游促销有三个目的。首先是巩固原有的旅游市场。一般来讲,原有的旅游市场如

果不经常在各种媒体上促销的话,就像许多商品一样,被人淡忘。也要巩固旅行社原来的顾客。这些顾客是那些已经把旅游作为一种生活必要构成成分的人群。他们定期旅游,如果不进行经常性的宣传,他们就会投向其他的旅行社。其次是为了扩大自己的市场份额,扩大顾客群体。通过广泛的宣传,培育新的旅游群体和旅游爱好。再次是为了克服旅游淡季和旺季的差异。通过宣传,特别是通过宣传旅游淡季的价格优惠,吸引更多的生意。通常冬季是旅游的淡季,但是通过宣传,越来越多的在南方生活的人也开始到北方进行冬季旅游,领略北方的冰雪世界。

IX Try to find the website of WTO (the World Tourism Organization) and learn something about the organization.

以下是一个对你有用的网站列表,帮助你准备有关国家的分析。一旦你到_____旅行,你将能利用你的第一手信息,把这些信息和你在以下网站上得到的信息结合起来。在出发到_____前,用电子邮件给你的老师寄一页总结,表明你根据为这门课程提供的在线资源发现的信息。

www.worldtrademagazine.com

www.wto.org

www.imf.org

www.cob.ohio-state.edu

www.businessmonitor.com

www.emta.org

www.emgmkts.com

www.emdirectory.com

www.emerging-markets.com

www.worldtrademagazine.com

www.exporter.com

www.pangaea.com

Unit Two

Tours of Sites of Chinese Revolution



Dialogues



Dialogue A



- A:** Nice to see you again. I would like to ask you some more questions about modern tourism if you are not busy?
- B:** It's alright. But what shall we begin with?
- A:** How about cultural tourism?
- B:** You mean those tours to such cities like Rome, Paris, Beijing or Kyoto. Sure these cities are cultural centers of respective countries with rich cultural heritage as exhibited through their museums, concert halls, theatres, libraries.
- A:** Then you know nowadays it is fashionable to develop what is termed as sustainable tourism. But I don't understand what it precisely refers to. Would you like to give me some examples of so-called sustainable tourism?
- B:** Let me see. Yes, such tours like safaris in Kenya, rain forests in Brazil or national parks in the United States.
- A:** Then why are they called tours of sustainable tourism? Is there any difference between such tours and conventional ones?
- B:** Sure there is a lot of difference between them. For instance, in sustainable tourism, natural sceneries are kept in the original look, without man-made things added to them.

Wild animals are roaming in wildness unlike in an urban zoo where they are kept in cages, so that the chain of natural life is unbroken, and everything finds its position in nature. The cycle of life goes on naturally and harmoniously. You won't live in hotels that are too close to animals to disturb them. But on a conventional tourist site, animals are kept in cages, and tourists live in luxury hotels that are built near animals and scenic spots. Besides, there are too many visitors than the scenic spots can support. What's more, there are too many factories belching out smoke and too many vehicles roaring day and night, and as a result, the tranquility and harmony of nature with man is upset, and animals are disappearing and plants are dying out. Tourism will be gone like that.

Dialogue B



(C = clerk, G = guest)

C: Good morning, sir. Can I help you?

G: Yes. I think you have a room reserved for me. My name is Dan Millison from New York.

C: That's right, sir. We have a single room for you.

G: Does it have a shower or bath?

C: The room has a bath.

G: I'd like a room with both, if that's possible.

C: No problem. Would you like a room with or without a balcony?

G: It makes no difference to me.

C: Then Room 1124, on the eleventh floor, and the daily rate is 60 US dollars per night.

G: Thank you. What time do you serve breakfast?

C: From 7:00 to 9:30. Could you fill in the registration form, please?

G: Sure. Would you please pass that pen to me? . . . Thanks. (After he has finished filling the form) Here you are. I think I've filled in everything correctly.

C: Let me see . . . name, address, nationality, forwarding address, passport number, place of issue, signature and date of departure. But you forget to put in the date of your departure. Let me help you to put it in for you. You will leave on . . .

- G: December 3rd.
- C: Now everything's OK. Here is your key, Mr. Millison and here is your key card with all the information on your booking, the hotel service and hotel rules and regulations on it. Please make sure that you have it with you all the time. You need to show it when you sign for your meals and drinks in the restaurant and the bars. You also need to show it when collecting your key from the Information Desk.
- G: OK. I'll take good care of it.
- C: And now if you are ready, Mr. Millison, I'll call the bell boy and he'll take you to your room.
- G: Yes, I'm ready. Thank you very much.
- C: Hope you'll have an enjoyable stay in our hotel.

Reading Material



Red tourism refers to visits to former revolutionary bases and landmark sites, or a movement launched in recent years by China's national tourism administration to promote the "national ethos" and "social-economic development" in those above-mentioned areas, which are usually land-locked and economically backward.

"This is a major project that benefits both the Party, the nation and the people, either in the economic, cultural or the political sense," said an official with the national coordination group on "red tourism", made up of people from ministries of the central government. The official said "red tourism" would help people to further review the rise of the Communist Party of China (CPC) and the nation. There are abundant facts in these sites showing the Party and socialism are the choice of history and the people. "It will make people, especially the young people, to further consolidate their faith in pursuing the road of socialism with Chinese characteristics and realizing the great rejuvenation of the nation under the leadership of the CPC," he said. He said the great national ethos that grew out of the fights to win national independence were valuable assets in both the revolutionary war periods and present-day efforts to realize the rejuvenation of the country. Visits to these sites will infuse such elements in the youngsters.

Collective student visits are free of charge and individual student visits are half the

normal price, according to the program. The sites, including the Jinggangshan Mountains, the Taihang Mountains, Yan'an, Xibaipo, are mostly poor land-locked areas. The official predicted the implementation of the program would speed up the social and economic development there. According to preliminary statistics, more than 150 major "red tourism" sites in 13 provinces and municipalities hosted 20 million visitors in 2004. During the week-long Spring Festival that started on Feb. 9, 2005, Yan'an in Shaanxi Province received 110,000 domestic and overseas visitors. The official estimated the "red tourism" program would bring 20 billion yuan (2.41 billion US dollars) worth of benefits to the sites across the country each year,



while stimulating the development of construction, commerce, communications and other related sectors there. The program is launched by the general offices of the CPC Central Committee and the State Council at the end of 2004, and designed for implementation in two phases. During the first phase, from 2004 to 2007, major efforts are on establishing a preliminary "red tourism" framework based on 100 sites highlighting 30 tourist routes and 12 major zones. Infrastructure in these sites will be further enhanced to realize all-round development of "red tourism", the goal of the second phase, according to the program. The official said the state would make policies supporting travel agencies to manage "red tourism" routes. Various businesses and social organizations are encouraged to participate in the construction and management of the sites.



- 1 **Kyoto**: a city and ancient capital of Japan, now part of Osaka-Kobe industrial complex, famous for its artisans
- 2 **safari**: especially a hunting expedition in east or central Africa
- 3 **national ethos**: code of values by which a nation lives
- 4 **the mountains**: When mountains are used in a writing or speech, there should always be a definite article "the" used. They refer to a range of mountains, but not a single peak.

- 5 **Mount/ ... Mountain**: While in contrast, when Mount or Mountain is used in a writing, there should not be a definite article, e. g. Mount Tai, Wutai Mountain.
- 6 **the Yellow River**: While with rivers, there is always a definite article, e. g. the Yangtze River, the Nile, the Amazon; with lakes, it is the opposite, we may say Lake Victoria, Lake Huron or West lake, East Lake, no articles used.
- 7 **land-locked**: remote, not easily accessible on land
- 8 **CPC**: the Communist Party of China
- 9 **State Council**: the highest administrative department for the country's day to day affairs. Its American counterpart is called the state department.
- 10 **free of charge**: asking for no payment
- 11 **speed up**: accelerate; quicken the pace
We have to speed up, or we will miss the train. 我们必须抓紧时间, 否则会误火车。
If we do not speed up production, we can not meet the demand of market.
如果我们不加快生产, 就满足不了市场需求。
- 12 **slow down**: reduce the speed
The driver slowed down before he reached the crossroads.
在到达十字路口前, 司机减速了。
- 13 **participate in**: take part in
- 14 **die out and die off**
die out: become extinct
If we do not take effective measures to protect those rare animals, they will soon die out.
如果我们不采取措施保护这些稀有动物, 它们将灭绝。
die off: die one by one
The flowers in the garden are dying off. 花园里的花正在相继死去。



• Exercises

- I Try to read the following words and expressions taken from the text and fill the brackets with the corresponding phonetic symbols. You may look them up in your dictionary and pay attention to the relation between spellings and phonetic symbols.

boost [] v. cause to improve or increase

ethos	[]	<i>n.</i>	a set of ideas or attitudes held by a particular group of people for their activities
coordination	[]	<i>n.</i>	the act of organizing various people or things involved in an activity
abundant	[]	<i>a.</i>	in large quantity
consolidate	[]	<i>vt.</i>	strengthen; secure
rejuvenation	[]	<i>n.</i>	the act of making lively or energetic again
infuse	[]	<i>vt.</i>	put or fill in
predict	[]	<i>vt.</i>	foresee
implementation	[]	<i>n.</i>	carrying out
speed up	[]	<i>vt.</i>	quicken
preliminary	[]	<i>a.</i>	basic
stimulate	[]	<i>vt.</i>	cause to move or act
highlight	[]	<i>n.</i>	a part emphasized
		<i>vt.</i>	emphasize; make more conspicuous
enhance	[]	<i>vt.</i>	raise; strengthen
infrastructure	[]	<i>n.</i>	basic facilities such as supply of water, electricity, roads and telecommunication conditions
all-round			in or from all respects

II Give definitions to the mentioned words.

1. How do you define red tourism?
2. What does ethos mean?
3. What does a coordination group do?
4. How do you understand abundant?
5. What does consolidate mean?
6. How do you define consolidation?
7. What is the antonym of speed up?
8. What does it mean by stimulate?
9. How do you understand implementation?
10. What does infrastructure mean?

III Discuss the following questions with your classmates.

9. Which of the following is NOT in the sphere of infrastructure?
 A. Roads. B. Power. C. Buildings. D. Ideas.
10. A red tourism route should link _____.
 A. as many spots of red tourism as possible
 B. as few spots of red tourism as possible
 C. some spots of red tourism far from one another
 D. some spots of red tourism close from one another

V Match the words or expressions in the following columns.

A	B
membership	王府
royal palace	会员制
site of cultural relics under state protection	国家文物保护单位
the Law of the People's Republic of China	《中华人民共和国文物保护法》
on Protection of Cultural Relics	国家文物局
the State Bureau of Cultural Relics	中国旅行社
China National Tourism Administration	中国青年旅行社
China Travel Service	中国国家旅游局
China Youth Travel Service	国家公园
sustainable development	可持续发展
national park	世界遗产委员会
WTO	联合国教科文组织
World Heritage Committee	世界旅游组织
UNESCO	

VI Match the following phrases in their proper forms with the sentences below the square.

add ... to ...	belch out	as a result	made up of	grow out of
free of charge	speed up	worth (of)	participate in	all-round

- The emperor ordered that the separate sections of the existing walls be _____ one another to form what was later called the Great Wall.
- Many rare species of animals have become extinct. _____ the nature's biological

chain has been broken.

3. Nobody is allowed to enter the theater _____.
4. I only paid 200 dollars for this second hand computer, but it is _____ much more.
5. Everyone wants to _____ the body building exercise.
6. Their team _____ 12 experienced doctors and nurses.
7. The factory stacks _____ poisonous gases day in and day out polluting the environment of this densely populated area.
8. His resentment against him _____ his jealousy.
9. We have to _____ our movement, or we'll lag behind all of them.
10. As the successors to the cause of socialism, we should develop ourselves in a(n) _____ way, morally, intellectually and physically.

VII Translate the following passage into Chinese with a view to knowing something about the practice in tourism.

Through Customs Quickly

Leisure travelers like business travelers now enjoy the convenience of quick passage through immigration control if they have a record of reentrance of the country three times a year. The passage will be done in 15 to 20 seconds with the help of an electronic recognition system, which gives the green light to such travelers.

At such international terminals as John F. Kennedy, Newark, Miami, Los Angeles, Toronto and Vancouver, the system reads a plastic card, and then recognizes a traveler's hand inserted in a kiosk that looks like an A. T. M. Business travelers are approved for a free one-year certification to use the system named Inpass; Immigration and Naturalization Service Passenger Accelerated Service System. It is free now, but it is said there will be a charge for it.

As a tourist to enter a destination country, you will be issued an entry card on board the plane. You should fill in the card the information as required. Before you move to the immigration control, get ready your passport and the entry card for examination. Your personal belongings will not be charged unless they are overweight. An airline typical of the industry allows a maximum of two checked baggage items free of charge for each ticketed passenger for domestic and international travel. Each passenger is permitted one carry-on, plus one personal item. Baggage additional may be accepted for an excess baggage fee. Besides, any baggage must comply with the size and weight limits listed below.

Carry-on items: They must fit easily in a Size Wise unit (about dimensions 22" × 14" ×

9") and must weigh less than 40 pounds.

Personal items; Besides one carry-on item, you may also bring one personal item on to the plane such as

- A male or female purse
- A briefcase
- A laptop computer
- A camera case
- A diaper bag
- An item of a similar size or smaller size to those listed above

Some other items may also be brought in addition to what is listed above and does not count towards your allowance such as

- Food for immediate consumption
- Indispensable items for disabled persons like wheelchairs or crutches
- One box or bag of duty free coat/jacket/umbrella or one item of reading material.

A traveler should know that on domestic flights he or she has to pay an excess baggage fee for an item that is between 50 and 100 pounds, while items on international flights should not weigh more than 70 pounds, an excess baggage fee will be charged for the weight between 70 and 100 pounds, but items weighing more than 100 pounds will simply be rejected for acceptance.

Most airlines charge an excess baggage fee if you have more than two pieces of checked baggage per ticket passenger, or if one or more of your bags exceeds the weight or size restrictions outlined in the charts below. This can carry a triple whammy. You will incur the excess charge 3 times: once for the extra piece, once for exceeding the size limitation, and once for exceeding the weight limitation. (Fees listed below apply to travel in the United States, Puerto Rico, the US Virgin Islands and Canada. Check with your airline for International Rules.)

Excess Baggage Fees:

Number of Additional Bags	Fee Due at Check-in
First additional item	\$40
Second & third additional items	\$80 each
4th, 5th, 6th additional items	\$105 each
7th or more additional items	\$180 each

Excess Weight Fees:

Bags	Fee Due at Check-in
Weighing 51 to 70 pounds	\$25 each
Weighing from 71 to 100 pounds	\$80 each

Excess Size Fee:

Number of Bags	Fee Due at Check-in
Any item over 62 inches (not to exceed 80 inches)	\$80 each

VIII Translate the following from Chinese into English and at the same time try to get familiar with some facts concerning red tourism.

A

革命圣地井冈山，不仅是中国革命的摇篮，也是全国重点风景名胜区，拥有“中国旅游胜地四十佳之一”、“中国优秀旅游城市”和国家4A级风景名胜区的称号。红色革命历史和优美壮丽的山河构成井冈山得天独厚的风光特色。

就是在这里，中国共产党开创了革命根据地，从此星星之火燃遍九州。到井冈山就是要目睹革命的足迹，学习井冈山精神。

井冈山革命博物馆坐落在茨坪，当年是井冈山革命根据地的中心。它是一座砖瓦结构、飞檐挑角，具有秀丽典雅的南方特色和古香古色的民族风格的建筑物。它建成于1959年，是我国第一个地方性革命博物馆，旨在全面陈列和宣传井冈山革命根据地的斗争历史。1962年朱德同志题写馆名。展馆分为七个展室：序厅、井冈山革命根据地的创立、井冈山革命根据地的发展、井冈山革命根据地的恢复、坚持井冈山的斗争和弘扬井冈山精神等部分。展馆通过大量的历史文物和翔实的历史资料介绍了艰苦卓绝的井冈山斗争历史：1927年10月，毛泽东率领湘赣边界秋收起义部队到达井冈山，成为中国革命从城市转向农村的第一步。随后，朱德、陈毅和彭德怀等人先后率领队伍来到井冈山，与毛泽东的部队胜利会师，创建了中国第一个农村革命根据地。随后，红军粉碎了国民党反动派对井冈山根据地的军事“围剿”和经济封锁，取得了井冈山斗争的胜利。

在井冈山，以毛泽东为代表的共产党人把马列主义的普遍真理同中国革命的具体实践相结合，开辟了一条以农村包围城市、武装夺取政权的有中国特色的革命道路，从而奠定了中国革命胜利的基础，其丰功伟绩永远彪炳于中国革命的史册。今天，井冈山革命博物馆已成为人们进行爱国主义和革命传统教育的课堂，在社会主义精神文明建设中发挥着重要的作用。

B

1988年，由邓小平同志题写馆名的全国唯一一所全面反映八路军抗战史实的大型纪念馆——八路军太行纪念馆在武乡县城建成，并正式对外开放。该馆作为全国100个爱国主义示范教育基地之一，接待了江泽民同志等党和国家领导人及中外游客1600万人次，2004年被中宣部授予全国优秀爱国主义教育基地，是山西省唯一获此殊荣的馆所。2004年8月，中共中央政治局常委李长春同志在这里视察，批示大力发展红色旅游事业。此后，山西省把八路军太行纪念馆扩建改造工程列为全省一号文化工程，共投入2.7亿元，工程建设包括连接八路军总部王家峪和砖壁百团大战总指挥部旧址、太行龙湖、太行龙洞、太行板山、太行黄崖洞在内的红色旅游专用线路。届时太（原）长（治）高速公路也将竣工通车，使游客能更方便地领略太行老区的红色旅游资源，有力地促进了太行精神和老八路传统的弘扬。目前，山西省正以八路军太行纪念馆、八路军总部王家峪旧址、黎城黄崖洞八路军兵工厂等革命纪念地为依托，争取把长治建成又一红色旅游基地。

IX Try to find the websites of China Travel Service (CTS), China International Travel Service (CITS), China Youth Travel Service (CYTS), and learn something about these organizations.

以下是一个美国教育文化旅游团给参加活动的人员布置的讨论话题，请根据这些话题，考虑旅游者可能对你作为导游提出的问题。注意参考网站信息。

1. 评估中国的文化氛围。
2. 分析中国今天正在崛起的市场。
3. 考虑中国作为世界主要国家对全球的影响。
4. 如何明智地与他人探讨中国文化氛围。
5. 如何欣赏中国文化和中国人民的多元化和习俗。
6. 如何轻松把美元兑换成人民币，或人民币兑换成美元。
7. 如何用普通话进行简单交流。
8. 如何欣赏和理解中国饮食底蕴。
9. 谈谈自己对中国五个主要地区的异同的一些了解。
10. 谈谈一些曾影响中国文化和中国人民的历史事件。
11. 谈谈一些影响中国地区间贸易的多样的地理和气候因素。
12. 通过与中国学术界的交流，了解中国基本的教育体制。
13. 谈谈在国外旅行注意的一些礼仪。

Unit Three

Tours of Sites of Cultural Heritage



Dialogues



Dialogue A



- A:** I hear some people say that even disasters may turn into disaster tourism.
- B:** Yes. For example, on December 24, 2004, a tsunami, caused by the 2004 Indian Ocean earthquake hit Asian countries bordering the Indian Ocean, and also the Maldives. Tens of thousands of lives were lost, and many tourists died. This, together with the vast clean-up operation in place, has stopped or severely hampered tourism to the area.
- A:** Then why is it called disaster tourism?
- B:** Because some people go to disaster scenes not to help, but to have a look. They may hinder the relief work after a disaster.
- A:** But I learn that many people go to visit the disaster stricken areas to spend money. They say it is the best way to help the local people in the disaster stricken areas. Their visits help the recovery of local tourism.
- B:** I prefer them not to come right after a disaster as it takes time to get everything back to the right track.
- A:** But will you divert no more and come back to places of cultural heritage?
- B:** As the word suggests, heritage refers to all the qualities that are passed on from one

generation to another.

- A:** Your explanation is still hard for me to understand. Will you give me some examples?
- B:** Be patient. For example, Yungang Grottoes was designated many years ago by the United Nations as a place of world cultural heritage. It has the qualities of exquisite religious magnificence, humanistic and artistic value, and others. These qualities have perpetuated in those statues and caves, and will go down in history as a kind of treasure cherished by all the people, not only the Chinese, but people anywhere, regardless of their races or religions.
- A:** I agree with you. Now I understand why people of different races, age groups or religious backgrounds all like visiting places of cultural heritage. It must be something common to all of them. For example, love of peace, love of nature, love of life, to name only a few.
- B:** And love of beauty.
- A:** I can also give you an example, like the idea of rebirth in many regions. In Buddhism, believers talk about reincarnation, and in Christianity, believers talk about resurrection.
- B:** You are right.

Dialogue B



(**B** = bellboy, **G** = guest)

- B:** (He welcomes and shows the guest to his room.) Good evening.
- G:** Good evening.
- B:** Welcome to our hotel.
- G:** Thanks.
- B:** May I help you with your luggage, sir?
- G:** Yes. Please carry this bag for me.
- B:** The Reception Desk is over there. This way, please. (After the guest has been registered, the bellboy shows him up to his room.) Shall I show you up to your room now, sir?
- G:** Yes. Thanks a lot.

- B:** Please follow me. By the way, you look a bit tired.
- G:** It's all because of the jetlag. I hope after a hot bath and rest I'll get refreshed next morning.
- B:** Oh, yes. You will. Here is Room 1124, sir. Come please.
- G:** I must say it is a delightful room, big and bright. It looks comfortable.
- B:** The room on the left is the bathroom. This is the calling button. If you want to call us, just press it.
- G:** Yes, I see. Is there a closet here?
- B:** Yes, the mirror over there is the door to the closet. There is a pair of slippers in the night-table. You can use the envelopes and writing-paper in the drawers of the desk if you want to write something. You can help yourself to the fruits in the fridge over there in the corner. But you will be charged separately and fairly for the consumption.
- G:** Good. It suits me perfectly. Will there be heating at night?
- B:** Not only at night, but around the clock. You can control the room temperature with that button by your bed.
- G:** Thank you.
- B:** You're welcome.

Reading Material



The well-known Terra-Cotta Museum is located east of Emperor Qin's Mausoleum, which covers a total area of 20 hectares. The museum is decorated with verdant trees, blooming flowers and carpets of green grass. The scenery in the museum looks quite elegant and delightful. Three main buildings of the museum, which were named Pit 1, Pit 2, Pit 3, were constructed on their original sites in different periods of time.

It was on March 29, 1974, when local farmers of Xiyang Village, Lintong County, were digging a series of wells in search of water, pottery fragments and ancient bronze weapons were discovered accidentally. The head of the village reported the discovery to the local government at once. The news aroused much attention from both the local government and State Cultural Relics Bureau. With the approval from the government, an archaeological team from Shaanxi Province arrived at the site on July 17, 1974 and began their explorations and

the Qin Shihuang Terra-Cotta Museum was opened to the public later. By the time of the opening ceremony, the archaeologists had excavated the area of 2,000 square meters in Pit 1 and some 1,087 terra-cotta warriors and horses were displayed there after restoration. The usually quiet village unknown before to outsiders has become hustling and bustling ever since then. The archaeological wonder discovered here came as a shock to the country as well as to the whole world. Following the discovery of Pit 1, Pit 2 and Pit 3 were brought to light in April and May of 1976. Pit 3 was opened in 1989. Pit 2 started to be excavated in March 1994 and was opened in October the same



year while it was being excavated. Besides the three pits, two sets of bronze chariots and horses discovered in the west of Emperor Qin's Mausoleum in December 1980 were on display in the museum after restoration.

In the last 20 years, the terra-cotta museum has developed and become the largest on-site museum in China. The museum staff has increased. More and more valuable cultural relics have been unearthed successively. The archaeological research is fruitful. Pit 1 is a huge arch-domed steel structure, located at the center of the museum with an area of 16,000 square meters. The other two pits were 17,934 and 1,694 square meters respectively. The multiple exhibition halls stand to the east of Pit 2, covering a series of exhibits, such as two sets of bronze chariots and horses, the new findings from Emperor Qin's Mausoleum, the history of the Museum and all kinds of temporary exhibits. These displays systematically depict the history of the Qin Dynasty from 221 BC to 206 BC and can help the viewers to have a better understanding of the terra-cotta warriors and horses. The south of Pit 1 is a circular vision hall. The movie inside lasts 20 minutes and provides vivid materials to tell the story of Emperor Qin and his terra-cotta army 2,200 years ago. The halls on the northwest of Pit 3, which covers 4,282 square meters, are the multiple service halls where visitors can have meals, do shopping or take a rest.

The Emperor Qin Terra-Cotta Museum is not only a treasure house where tourists can learn history, culture and human civilization, but also a main scenic spot of Xi'an city. It can receive about 1.5 million tourists annually. Approximately 40 million visitors from home and abroad have visited the Museum within last 20 years. Today "the eighth wonder of the world" has almost become a synonym of the Terra-cotta Warriors and Horses. In 1987,

Emperor Qin's Mausoleum was put on the list of the UNESCO as a world-class cultural heritage site. Now the Museum is well-known as a huge modern on-site museum and it is going to be one of the best in the world.

Many important men have crossed the Chinese historical stage during the last 5,000 years. One of the most important was to be known later as Emperor Qin Shihuang, the first emperor in Chinese history. Born the son of King Zhang Xiang, the King of Qin, in the first month of the lunar year in 259 BC, he was first named Zhao Zheng and later his name was changed to Ying Zheng. Ying Zheng's mother was a beautiful concubine of Lü Buwei, the merchant who the king had met while he was a hostage in the nearby State of Zhao, prior to ascending the throne. In 247 BC, when Ying Zheng was only 13 years old, his father died and he ascended the throne as the King of Qin. Being too young to handle the affairs of the State, Lü Buwei served as his regent and the prime minister, together with Ying Zheng's mother, the Queen, administered the State of Qin. At the age of 22, Ying Zheng took over the reigns of the government himself. The first decision that he made was to put down a rebellion led by Lao Ai, a servant who had become intimate with the Queen. The following year, the young king removed his former regent, Lü Buwei, and exiled him to Sichuan where he later committed suicide. Having all of his own civil affairs in order, the king began the task of conquering the six other states. Beginning from 230 BC, he brought to their knees the kings of Qi, Chu, Yan, Han, Zhao and Wei. Finally, in 221 BC, the King of Qin achieved his victory and unified the Qin Empire. His territory extended from the sea in the south and east, Lin Tao in the west and finally to Mount Yin and the area of Liao Dong in the north, the present Liaoning Province. It was at this time, at the age of 39 that the King of Qin declared himself to be "Qin Shi Huang Di", the first emperor of Qin. Feudal separation that had lasted since the Spring and Autumn Periods had finally come to an end. In order to consolidate his rule, Emperor Qin instituted a series of new policies. Probably his greatest contribution to the practice of government in China was his establishment of the centralized state and abolition of the feudal system. He divided the country into 36 prefectures that were further broken down into counties, townships, "Tings" and "Lis", which were grass-roots administrative units then, every Li governing 25 to 75 families and every Ting ten Lis. He appointed twelve ministers who helped him make decisions on state affairs. By appointing the ministers directly, Emperor Qin had all the powers of the State in his hands.

To further unify the country, Emperor Qin standardized the system of weights and measures, handwriting into small Seal Script and then went on to regulate the width of carriage axles to six feet. All these measures helped to establish a high centralization of

politics, economy, military affairs and culture. In a further attempt to control and protect his ideological policies, Emperor Qin destroyed many ancient records, burned Confucian scholarly books and killed many scholars by the Wei River and buried 700 scholars alive at the foot of Mount Li.

In order to have the social situation under control, he spent a lot of time reading reports from all parts of the country. He even had the documents weighed (Writings were inscribed on bamboo or wood at that time) every morning and night, and would not rest till a certain weight had passed through his hands.

Ensuring the security of his new empire was a major concern of Emperor Qin. An imperial road network on an unprecedented scale was ordered to build and a highway was opened straight through Capital Xianyang to the northern border. He used to have his five tours of inspection on such an imperial route to far-flung corners of his domain. Stone memorial tablets with inscriptions were erected wherever he went for leaving Emperor's merits and virtues, ordering his people to abide by the law of the State of Qin. Undoubtedly the First Emperor's greatest and most impressive achievement was the incorporation of the defensive walls previously built by different states in the Warring States Period. He appointed General Meng Tian as commander-in-chief of the imperial forces who had already distinguished himself in subduing the Xiong-nu Tartars in the far north and northwest, with the task of building the wall, thus taking shape the Great Wall of China, one of the wonders in the world. A huge labor force was organized to complete this project. Moreover, Emperor Qin sent his army to guard five mountains in southern part of China and ordered the Lin Canal be constructed. All these measures played such an active role in establishing a unified country- the State of Qin.

What is inevitably mentioned by visitors is his tomb. According to a decree of the Second Emperor, those of his father's ladies who had no children were ordered to follow the emperor to the grave, as well as a lot of tomb builders buried alive. Emperor Qin's funeral was described by *Han Shu (Book of Han)* as follows: "thousands of officials were buried alive with the purpose of keeping secret". The construction was roughly finished during the reign of the Second Emperor because a series of the peasant's revolts occurred.

Emperor Qin believed that the life under ground was a continuation of it above ground, so he ordered such a huge mausoleum to be constructed 2,200 years ago. At the same time he left his highly developed civilization to people today.

The construction of Emperor Qin's Mausoleum lasted near 40 years. Thousands of thousands of people were involved in this huge construction. When the tomb was too deep to

dig in, a report arrived from Minister Li Si: "It seemed that we had reached the bottom of the earth and could not dig in any more." Even then Emperor ordered to try again. It is apparent that the emperor took a lot care of his mausoleum and required it as big as possible.

The ideal site faces south, with rising land to the east and softly undulating hills to the west. It has a stream in the front and mountains in the back and is open to breezes in front, is dry and has no white ants. Often these sites are used for graves; ancestors must be appeased with the best of everything.

According to Feng Shui theory, the theory about geographical locations, Emperor Qin's Mausoleum was finally decided to be constructed on the site with evergreen Mount Li to the south and the Wei River to the north. Another reason for the emperor to select his mausoleum here was that this site was also the burial area of Qin Kings, since the capital of the State of Qin Kings moved, too. Ancient Chinese paid a lot of attention to burying their tribal men nearby the capital. After the capital was founded in Xianyang, the zone between Xianyang and Mount Li became the burial region for the Qin family. The tomb of Emperor Qin's father is only about 10 kilometers west of him.



- 1 ***tsunami***: a Japanese word, which comes from tsu (harbor) plus nami (wave)—a great sea wave produced especially by submarine earth movement or volcanic eruption
- 2 ***clean-up operation***: coming from the verbal phrase to clean up, meaning to make tidy. Here it means a movement after the tsunami to clean up the mess and turn the environment clean and clear again.
- 3 ***in place***: being ready for use. The phrase is often used to describe something in need is put there ready for use.
- 4 ***in search of***: the act of going through to look for something
They went in search of the treasure said to be buried somewhere on the island.
他们前去岛上某处据说是埋宝处的地方去探宝。
- 5 ***attention and attentions***
attention: [U] act of turning one's thoughts to somebody or something
You have to pay attention to your health especially when you have such a heavy work

load. 尤其是你的工作担子这样重, 你得注意健康。

attention: [C] kind or polite act

He got his mother angry when he only showed attentions to his girl friend.

他光向他的女朋友献殷勤, 使他的母亲很生气。

6 be open to

① be ready for use

The newly built bridge collapsed the moment it was open to traffic.

大桥投入使用时就坍塌了。

② be willing to accept others' suggestions or criticisms

As we are civil servants, to do a good job, we are open to people's suggestions and criticisms. 我们是公务员, 为了做好工作, 需虚怀若谷, 广纳批评建议。

7 on-site: right at the place something happened or occurred

An on-site museum is much better than one elsewhere built as it can offer a kind of sense of reality and mystery. 原址博物馆远胜于异地建造的博物馆, 因为它有真实感和神秘感。

8 prior to: before

China used to be down-trodden by the imperialists prior to the Opium War.

鸦片战争前, 中国饱受帝国主义者欺压。

9 ascend the throne: become the ruler of a country

She ascended the throne when the king passed away heirless.

国王驾崩无嗣, 她登上了王位。

10 take over: assume control of

When the president died of an acute disease, the vice president took over the power right away. 当总统死于一种急症时, 副总统立即接掌权力。

11 put down: suppress by force or authority

The emperor issued a decree sending a troop of 20,000 soldiers to put down the rebellion in the south of the country. 皇帝下诏, 派遣 20 000 名士兵前往南方平叛。

12 become intimate with: to get into an illegal sex relations with

He disguised himself as a eunuch and later became intimate with the emperor's concubines, who were out of his favor and in the cold. 他假扮太监, 后来和被皇帝冷落的嫔妃们有染。

13 exile somebody to: send somebody away to a place as a kind of punishment

Many officials were jealous of his ability and they framed him up under the charge of disloyalty to the emperor. As a result, he was exiled to the Miluo River, where in

despair he threw himself into the river. 许多官员嫉妒他的才干, 以对皇帝不忠为借口, 险害了他。结果他被发配到汨罗江, 在那里, 他绝望之下投江自尽。

14 *commit suicide*: kill oneself

The Tibetan mastiff committed suicide by hunger strike a few days later after his master passed away. 主人去世后几天, 这只藏獒不吃不喝, 绝食自尽。

15 *come to an end*: finish or end

In 1949, after more than three years' liberation war, the Nationalist Party's rule on the mainland of China came to an end. 1949年, 三年多的解放战争后, 国民党在中国大陆的统治终结了。

16 *in one's hands*: under one's control; being looked after

The whole matter is in his hands. 整件事在他的掌握之中。

17 *Small Seal Script*: This is a font with its characters in the form of writing in the Qin dynasty era and represents one of the steps of evolution, near oracle bone characters, in the evolution of Chinese characters in general.

Large Seal Script: "Big Seal" was used in bronze vessel and stone beat. "Big Seal" is the character in East Zhou, seal word simplified JIAGUWEN.

Cursive Script (caoshu): Cursive script (Traditional Chinese: 草书; Pinyin: cǎoshū), also known as the Grass script (a literal translation), is a style of Chinese calligraphy. The name originates because the Chinese character for "grass" (草; pinyin: cǎo) also means loose and sketchy. Cursive script is faster to write than other styles, but also harder to read. It is quite often the case that persons who are capable of reading printed Chinese find themselves completely illiterate when confronted with this particular style of writing.

18 *in an attempt to*: try hard to do something

He gave his workers some extra money in an attempt to appease their anger when they were asked to work over time on Christmas Day. 当他让工人们圣诞节加班时, 他额外给工人们一些钱, 以平息他们的不满情绪。

19 *bury somebody alive*: a cruel practice in war or in feudal times when an army tried to strike terror into the enemy or a rich man or ruler wanted to conceal his secret or hoped that his wife or servants would accompany him in another world.

It is said that a Qin general named Bai Qi buried alive many captured soldiers of the State of Zhao. 据说秦将白起活埋了许多赵国的俘虏。

20 *have something under control*: control something

Many places have reported floods this year. But as a result of timely forecast and the effective support of the army, the disaster stricken areas have had the floods under

control on the whole. 据报今年许多地方发生洪水。但是由于预报及时，加上军队的有效支援，总的来说，受灾地区控制住了洪水。

21 *spend time doing something and waste time doing something*

He spent three days reading the related literature in an attempt to repair the imported machine that had been out of order for days. 为了修复已经停止工作多日的进口机器，他花了几天时间阅读相关文献。

They have wasted much time preparing for a match that is unlikely to be held as the invited team is short of money for the trip. 由于受邀请队没钱赴约，他们白费了好多时间备战。

22 *merits and virtues*: strong points and contributions

23 *abide by*: follow rules or regulations

Visitors should abide by the instructions not to take photos in the areas where photo-taking is prohibited. 观众应遵守规定，不在禁止拍照区域拍照。

24 *commander-in-chief*: number one commander in the army

25 *distinguish oneself in doing something*: show one's ability or character in doing something

He distinguished himself in the examination. 他在考试中脱颖而出。

26 *thus*: so (After "thus", usually a phrase in -ing form is used.)

They scored a 4 to 0 victory, thus clearing away the doubt cast on them by their fans. 他们以4比0获胜，驱散了他们的球迷对他们的怀疑。

27 *undulating hills*: ranges after ranges of hills, rolling like waves

28 *be appeased with something*: be made no longer angry/hungry with something provided

Why don't you appease your hunger with some cakes? 你为什么不吃点心压压饥呢?

• Exercises 

- I** Try to read the following words and expressions taken from the text and fill the brackets with the corresponding phonetic symbols. You may look them up in your dictionary and pay attention to the relation between spellings and phonetic symbols.

perpetuate	[]	vt.	cause something to continue
go down in history as . . .			be memorized or recorded forever as

designate somebody or something as ...			appoint somebody or something as
reincarnation	[]	<i>n.</i>	rebirth
resurrection	[]	<i>n.</i>	coming to life again
tsunami	[]	<i>n.</i>	disastrous tidal waves
the Maldives	[]	<i>n.</i>	马尔代夫
terra	[]	<i>n.</i>	earth
cotta	[]	<i>n.</i>	surplice 白袈裟
verdant	[]	<i>a.</i>	green and fresh
mausoleum	[]	<i>n.</i>	burial place

II Give definitions to the mentioned words.

1. How do you define the word “perpetuate”?
2. Make up a sentence with the phrase “go down in history as ...”
3. Make up a sentence with the phrase “designate ... as ...”.
4. What is meant by reincarnation?
5. What is the meaning of resurrection?
6. Describe the scene of a tsunami.
7. Look up “the Maldives” in an encyclopedia and retell what you find.
8. Describe what a terra cotta warrior looks like.
9. What is the meaning of verdant?
10. Describe what a mausoleum looks like and what its use is.

III Discuss the following questions with your classmates.

1. How do you understand the importance of protection of cultural heritage?
2. What can we do to protect cultural heritage?
3. What can be regarded as nonphysical cultural heritage?
4. Give some examples of nonphysical cultural heritage.
5. Discuss the importance of the Great Wall in the national defense of China in ancient times.
6. Give some examples of places of world cultural heritage in China.
7. How can we develop tourism in areas of cultural heritage?
8. What potential has not been fully tapped in developing tourism in areas of cultural heritage?

- completed on time.
2. _____ the liberation in 1949, the Chinese people had lived under feudalism, bureaucratic capitalism and imperialism, the so called three big mountains.
 3. He did everything in his power _____ prevent the economic crisis from occurring.
 4. I advised him to be realistic about his relations with his female boss so that he would not _____ her.
 5. During the Cultural Revolution, he _____ Heilongjiang Province to remould himself in world outlook.
 6. With his son's children _____, he scarcely has time for an outing even.
 7. He went to Europe early in his twenties _____ the revolutionary truth that could help him find out a way to the success of revolution in his own country.
 8. You should _____ the masses' suggestions and criticisms if you really want to enrich your knowledge and experience.
 9. After their joint efforts began to show effect, they had practically _____ the foot and mouth disease _____.
 10. While traveling in a foreign country, you have to _____ the local laws and regulations.
 11. When will your bad practice _____?
 12. He hoped that he could _____ the coming tests.

VII Translate the following paragraph into Chinese with a view to knowing something about the practice in tourism.

**What Do You Do as a Tourist or a Tourist
Guide at the Entry Place of a Destination Country?**

As a tourist in a packaged tour group, you may not be worried as you have left everything to your tourist conductor, the one sent by the travel agency you entrusted. You can just follow the conductor and a stream of travelers to the luggage area to fetch your luggage and then to the customs for the inspection. A local tourist guide will be expecting you at the exit. Mostly he or she holds a signboard with the name of your tour group and your departure place on, so you will not make a mistake. The guide will walk up to you and make sure you are the person or persons he or she has waited for. Then the guide will show you to the bus he or she has arranged for you, which will take you to the hotel you have

reserved beforehand.

VIII Translate the following from Chinese into English and at the same time try to get familiar with some facts concerning tourism.

A

1986年国务院指定平遥古城为“国家历史文化名城”，1997年联合国教科文组织把它列为“世界文化遗产”。古城面积2.25平方公里，古城墙保存完整，整座城池成龟状，城内街道呈龟背纹络形。城内明清时代的古建筑星罗棋布，是我国传统文化的宝库。古城是中国汉族城市在明清时期的杰出范例，保存了其所有特征，为人们展示了一幅非同寻常的中国历史发展中文化、社会、经济及宗教发展的完整画卷。

自1997年12月3日，联合国教科文组织世界遗产委员会在意大利那不勒斯召开的第21届大会把平遥古城列入《世界遗产名录》后，旅游业成了该县的支柱产业和新的经济增长点，并得到了大力扶持和培育，日益显示出强劲的发展势头、广阔的发展前景和巨大的发展潜力。吃、住、行、游、购、娱六大要素日趋完善。景点开发初具规模，形成了以古城墙、日升昌、双林寺、县衙、城隍庙等为代表的八大类特色文化旅游景点；配套设施逐步改善，以南大街、北大街、东西大街等主干街改造为重点，古城基础设施环境明显好转，古城旅游区域不断扩大，形成两日游格局；全民办旅游氛围日益浓厚，全县宾馆饭店、民俗客栈等达到90余家，旅游车辆达到150余辆，旅游商店达到70余家，从业人员达到2万余人；旅游客源市场全面拓展，平遥古城知名度日益提高，300余家旅行社推出古城旅游线路，仅2002年就有数十位国家领导人先后考察平遥古城，特别是江泽民总书记8月20日亲临平遥古城，给予高度评价，并亲笔题词：“世界文化遗产平遥古城”；旅游交通网络不断完善，形成了以大运高速公路、东夏公路、108国道、南同蒲铁路等为主的公铁交通网络，全县邮电通信、金融保险、医疗服务等旅游相关行业也得到较快发展。古城旅游的人数呈现高速增长趋势，1997年到2001年旅游人数由12万人次增至81.92万人次，增长了6.83倍；景点门票收入及旅游收入由1997年的1354万元增至2001年的1.2亿元，增长了8.8倍；占GDP比重由1997年的1%增至2001年的8.5%。第三产业平均增长幅度超过了8%。通过3~5年时间的努力，平遥古城一定会成为名副其实的独具明清特色的国际品牌旅游城。

B

五台山旅游区位于山西省忻州地区东北部，平均海拔1000米以上，最高点北台叶门峰海拔3058米，被称为“华北屋脊”。五台山旅游区是一个融自然风光、历史文物、

古建艺术、佛教文化、民俗风情、避暑休养为一体的旅游区。

五台山主峰五座，东台望海峰可看云海日出，南台锦绣峰可睹花的海洋，西台挂月峰可赏明月娇色，北台叶门峰可览群山层叠，中台翠岩峰可见巨石如星，更有天造奇观“热融湖”、“冰胀丘”“石海石川”、“龙翻石”、“写字崖”、“佛母洞”等。南北穿流的清水河，哺育着沿崖万物生灵，有野生动物百种，奇花异卉万枝，是美丽的高山自然公园。

五台山是佛教文殊菩萨的道场，为中国四大佛教圣地之一。相传这里最早的佛教寺庙始建于东汉，经历代修葺扩建已形成一定规模。现存寺院48处，僧尼数百人。五台山历史悠久、文化灿烂、古建成群、文物荟萃、珍品云集，是中国古建、雕塑、绘画的艺术宝库。唐建南禅寺、佛光寺，始建于东汉、规模宏伟的显通寺及《华严经字塔》等千百件珍贵文物早已名扬四海。淳朴的民俗风情诱人动情，历史的名人轶事给人以启迪，众多的僧尼生活引人入胜。

南山寺是佑国寺、极乐寺、善德堂的合称，在五台台怀镇南3公里山腰。元贞二年（1296年）创建，明嘉靖二十年（1541年）重建，清代增修，将三寺合并，改称今名。民国初年又予扩建，全部联成一体。寺区背山面水，林荫蔽日。寺依山势建造，高低错落，层叠有致，有亭台楼阁、殿堂古塔300余间。寺前坡道林阴覆盖，山门下筑石磴108级，门前影壁砖雕细致，门上钟楼建造精巧。寺内殿宇形式结构各具特色，台级甚多，两侧栏板望柱上雕人物、花卉、鸟兽、故事等图案。各殿檐下坎墙或墀头下肩上，装置各种石雕人物、花卉、山水图案，内容有神话传说、戏剧人物、历史故事等，突破佛教教义范畴。各殿檐下，木雕图案精致，饰以彩绘贴金，更为富丽堂皇。大雄宝殿内塑释迦及二弟子和胁侍菩萨，石雕汉白玉送子观音，工艺尤精。两侧明代塑像十八罗汉，是五台山罗汉中的佳品。墙壁上满绘佛传故事，从乘象投胎到涅槃84幅，笔力流畅，色泽浑厚，是明代原作。寺内“真如处在”石刻一方，是慈禧所书。五台诸寺雕刻艺术，以南山寺为冠。

IX Try to find the websites of such spots of cultural heritage as Mount Tai, Mount Huang and the Shaolin Temple and know something more about them.

Please refer to the following websites:

www.huangshan.cn

www.mount-tai.com

www.wutaishan.com.cn

www.hengshantrip.com

Unit Four

Tours of Sites of Natural Heritage



Dialogues



Dialogue A



- A:** Theoretically speaking, what is an essential feature of tourism?
- B:** You have to move from place to place, so moving from one's usual residence is such a feature for sure.
- A:** That's correct. Then transportation would certainly come into picture, wouldn't it?
- B:** Certainly it would. Transportation is vital to the development of tourism. Without it, tourists couldn't move easily to their destinations.
- A:** Would you please introduce to me some means of transportation?
- B:** It's my pleasure. The question can be discussed from different points of view, for example, from the perspective of time. Airplanes are certainly most time efficient and are most suitable for long distance journeys such as from Beijing to Kunming or Urumchi or to a foreign destination. Or sometimes when you are in a hurry, air transportation should be your first choice.
- A:** How about railroads?
- B:** They have their advantages for certain. It was because of railroads that mass transportation became possible in the 19th century. By the way, traveling by train is much cheaper than by air. That's why most people, especially people with a lower income still prefer

train to airplane. What's more, it is impossible to build airports in small places, which is not economically affordable to build an airport in each county or town.

- A:** Even trains can't reach all the corners of a country. Then expressways and highways can play an important role in the business.
- B:** You're right there. For short or medium distance travels, buses can fill the gap left by airplanes and trains. They are cheap and can run at short intervals. For instance, buses from Beijing to Tianjin, Shijiazhuang or Taiyuan run at an interval of 20 minutes during the day and 30 or 40 minutes at night.
- A:** I've heard quite a lot about cruises. What is the good of them?
- B:** You know a cruise is a pleasure voyage by ship. Such as the one we all know about in the movie *Titanic*, but that was a tragic one, not by any means a pleasure voyage. But a cruise is usually very romantic. Many young people enjoy it when they go on a honeymoon trip. In China, sailing on the Yangtze River or along the coast of seas is very enjoyable. Yet, it is time-consuming. You can still have a try if you can afford the time and money.
- A:** But still I feel much restricted when I go on a trip with a packaged tour group as I have to follow the group here and there in a hurry. When the whistle is up, I have to move on even when I am exhausted or still too much interested in one scene to move on to the next one.
- B:** That's always the problem when you are with a group of any kind. You'd better be an independent traveler, so you can decide what time to go out and what time to have a rest as you like. Nowadays many people have got their own cars, so that they can go out on a self-driving tour. It is a very good option. On the other hand, if you do not want to spend too much on petrol, when you have a driving license and you arrive at a tourist destination, you can rent a car, and drive for a few days when you stay there.
- A:** But where can I rent one?
- B:** At a car rental agency. There are plenty of such agencies. Such a service rents automobiles for short periods of time. In England, the term is car hire.
- A:** So these means of transportation are complementary to one another.

Dialogue B 

(G = guest , C = clerk)

(Today's exchange rate is 6.80 yuan RMB to one US dollar.)

G: Good morning. My name is Dan Millison in Room 1124. Today I'm going out for sightseeing and buying some souvenirs. But I have no Chinese money, will you change some for me?

C: Sure. You're welcome. Traveller's Cheques or American dollars?

G: The latter. I see that today's exchange rate is 1 to 6.80.

C: That's right.

G: OK, please change 100 US dollars to Chinese RMB yuan.

C: OK. Please put your name, room number and the amount you desire in this form.

G: Yes. . . . Is this OK?

C: Yes, please.

G: Thank you. Here you are.

C: Would you please sign here on the exchange memo?

G: All right.

C: Thank you. Here is the money. It comes to 680 yuan. Please check it.

G: No problem. Thank you very much.

C: It's my pleasure.

Reading Material 

Angel Falls, located in the Guayana highlands, is 15 times higher than Niagara Falls. It plunges off the edge of a table-top mountain, locally pronounced as "tepui", and falls free 2,648 feet, about 807 meters, to the river below, thus being the tallest waterfall on earth. The falls was hidden in deep mountains until it was accidentally discovered in 1933 by a barnstorming bush pilot Jimmy Angel from Missouri while he was searching for valuable ore

bed. When he returned in 1937 with his wife and some others and landed his small airplane on top of the tepui, his monoplane got trapped in the marshy ground and remained there for 33 years before being lifted out by a helicopter. Jimmy and his three companions managed to descend the cliff and make their way back in 11 days.

If you want to fly by the falls, you have to at least stay there for two days, on condition that weather permits. The water goes down as a misty spray and gathers into a small creek and then winds its way into the north-bound Churun River. You may start your excursion by motorboat to explore remote areas, to see the Warao Indians and learn how they live in this isolated land of swamps and jungles. You may also enjoy the beauty of rich fauna and flora of this area, giant trees grown into the present shapes over hundreds of years. Numerous



small and big rivers meander leisurely under the covers of the water hyacinth plants. The place is also home to many birds like macaws, parrots, toucans, kingfishers, herons, hawks, egrets and storks. The fauna includes capuchin monkeys, howler monkeys, giant river otters, agoutis, freshwater dolphins, many species of snakes including the mighty anaconda and boa constrictors. Many such animals and plants are indigenous to South America.



- 1 **for sure/certain**: meaning certainly. But “sure” and “certain” here are used as nouns. A similar expression is in particular, where particular is also a noun.
- 2 **come into picture**: to get in; to interfere with
Where will the government come into picture on the issue of rising housing prices?
政府在房价上涨问题上从何处切入?
- 3 **be vital to**: be essential to; be extremely important to
Regular exercise is vital to one’s health. 经常锻炼对健康非常重要。
- 4 **from the perspective of**: at the angle of
In my opinion, if we are to look at these inquiries from the perspective of economic

development, we should not over-emphasize the distinction between democracy and non-democracy. 在我看来, 如果我们从经济发展角度审视这些要求, 我们不应过度强调民主与非民主之间的差异。

5 **be suitable for**: be fit for

This tractor is suitable for heavy duty. 该拖拉机适用于重型施工。

6 **by air/sea**: by plane/ship

Now they have got used to traveling by air. 现在他们已经习惯了空中旅行。

7 **at ... intervals**: with time between; with spaces between

Airport shuttle buses run at an interval of half an hour. 机场巴士每半小时一班。

8 **time-consuming**: costly in terms of time

English learning is very time-consuming. If you had spent that much time studying any subject else, you would have probably obtained a doctor's degree. 英语学习耗时间, 如果用于学其他科目, 你可能已获得博士学位了。

9 **be complementary to**: to help complete something

Playing and studying can be complementary to each other. 游戏和学习互补。

10 **fall free**: drop without any obstacles

With no plants growing out of the wall of the cliff, he fell free to the bottom of the valley and died right away. 岩壁上没有植物, 他坠入谷底, 当即毙命。

11 **on condition that**: only if; provided that

You can only make progress on condition that you start working hard on your studies. 只要你开始努力学习, 你就能取得进步。

12 **the Churun River**: (Spanish: Río Churun) a river in Venezuela, which is located in the Canaima National Park and flows from the Angel Falls which are the tallest falls on the planet

13 **be home to**: be the home of

The forest is home to many rare animals and plants. 森林是许多珍稀动植物的家园。

14 **be indigenous to**: exist only in

Kangaroos are indigenous to Australia as giant pandas to China. 袋鼠是澳大利亚特有的动物, 如同熊猫之于中国。

• Exercises 

I Try to read the following words and expressions taken from the text and fill the

brackets with the corresponding phonetic symbols. You may look them up in your dictionary and pay attention to the relation between spellings and phonetic symbols.

Guayana	[]	<i>n.</i>	a highland area in Venezuela
barnstorm	[]	<i>v.</i>	travel around putting on shows
bush pilot	[]	<i>n.</i>	a pilot that flies a small airplane over unsettled areas
tepui	[]	<i>n.</i>	tableland
swamp	[]	<i>n.</i>	wetland; marshland
fauna	[]	<i>n.</i>	animals collectively referred to as
flora	[]	<i>n.</i>	plants collectively referred to as
hyacinth	[]	<i>n.</i>	风信子
macaw	[]	<i>n.</i>	金刚鹦鹉
toucan	[]	<i>n.</i>	巨嘴鸟, 犀鸟
kingfisher	[]	<i>n.</i>	翠鸟
heron	[]	<i>n.</i>	苍鹭
hawk	[]	<i>n.</i>	鹰
egret	[]	<i>n.</i>	白鹭
stork	[]	<i>n.</i>	鹤
capuchin	[]	monkey <i>n.</i>	卷尾猴
howler	[]	monkey <i>n.</i>	吼猴
otter	[]	<i>n.</i>	水獭
agouti	[]	<i>n.</i>	刺豚鼠
anaconda	[]	<i>n.</i>	a kind of water snake
boa constrictor	[]	<i>n.</i>	python or huge snake

II Give definitions to the mentioned words.

1. What is a cruise?
2. What is a car rental agency?
3. What is a self-driving tour?
4. Where can you rent a car at your tourist destination?
5. Why do sometimes people want to be independent travelers?
6. What is a packaged tour?

7. What animals are indigenous to China?
8. What is a tepui?
9. How do you describe an otter?
10. How do you describe the plant of hyacinth?

III Discuss the following questions with your classmates.

1. How do you understand the advantages of different means of transportation?
2. Where is the tallest falls in the world?
3. How was Angel Falls discovered?
4. Who discovered Angel Falls?
5. How do you explain barnstorming?
6. What is a bush pilot?
7. What do you know about the fauna and flora in the area of Angel Falls?
8. Do you know a place in China which is somewhat like Angel Falls? If so, please talk about it.
9. What can we do to protect the fauna and flora in tourist areas?
10. Say some causes that lead to the disappearance of some rare animals and plants.

IV Circle the letter before the best choice of the four alternatives.

1. "Wu Yue", the five famous Chinese mountains refer to Mount Hua in Shaanxi Province, Mount Heng in Hunan Province, Mount Song in Henan Province, Mount Heng in Shanxi Province and _____.
A. Mount Jiuhua in Anhui Province B. Mount Emei in Sichuan Province
C. Mount Putuo in Zhejiang Province D. Mount Tai in Shangdong Province
2. The four great mountains of Buddhism in China include Mount Jiuhua, Mount Putuo, Mount Emei and Mount _____.
A. Wutai B. Tiantai C. Ali D. Song
3. Which of the following is China's first site of world cultural heritage designated by the UNESCO's World Heritage Committee?
A. The Great Wall. B. The Temple of Heaven.
C. The Potala Palace. D. The Classical Gardens in Suzhou.
4. Which of the following is both a place of cultural heritage and also a place of natural heritage?

- A. Ancient City of Ping Yao.
B. Chengde, a summer resort of the Qing Dynasty.
C. The Potala Palace.
D. Mount Tai.
5. Mount Yellow or Mount Huang is Not famous for _____.
A. exquisitely shaped pines B. hot springs
C. cloud seas D. beautiful flowers of various kinds
6. When tourists go on a cruise trip, they spend most of their time on a _____.
A. ship B. train C. airplane D. sleigh
7. For long distance travel, _____ is the best choice.
A. the airplane B. the ship C. the train D. the car
8. A hotel with special facilities for motors is called _____.
A. an inn B. a motel C. a hostel D. a condominium
9. A tour conductor accompanies his tourists _____.
A. during the whole process from the beginning to the end of the tour.
B. to the airport or the railway station when the tour group departs from the tourist source country.
C. to the airport or the railway station of the tourist destination.
D. in the areas of the tourist destination.
10. A tour guide accompanies his tourists _____.
A. during the whole process from the beginning to the end of the tour.
B. to the airport or the railway station when the tour group departs from the tourist source country.
C. to the airport or the railway station of the tourist destination.
D. in the areas of the tourist destination.

V Match the words or expressions in the following columns.

A	B
stalagmite	钟乳石
stalactite	石笋
spelunker	喀斯特地貌
Karst landform	洞穴探险者
the Ordovician period	寒武纪
the Cambrian period	奥陶纪

the Cretaceous period	白垩纪
the Carboniferous period	封建社会
feudal society	石炭纪
stele	黄土高原
loess plateau	刻有碑文的石柱

VI Match the following phrases in their proper forms with the sentences below the square.

for sure	come into picture	be vital to	from . . . perspective
be suitable for	by air	be home to	be indigenous to
at . . . intervals	on condition that	be complementary to	

1. People in big cities when they have got rich will help those in the countryside _____.
2. Vitamins _____ people's health.
3. _____ a historical _____, the peasants' uprising may have helped the country in its course of unification.
4. Traveling to a place thousands miles away, one had better travel _____.
5. The giant panda _____ China; therefore the ones you see elsewhere in the world are only domesticated ones.
6. The workers under such working conditions went on strikes _____ in an attempt to defend their own interests.
7. The forest _____ many rare animals and plants.
8. Renting an apartment _____ low wage earners.
9. We have bought all the books that _____ one another so as to get a whole picture of the country we are going to visit.
10. Where does legislature _____ on issues?
11. You can go swimming _____ you will not go too far from the river bank.

VII Translate the following passage into Chinese with a view to knowing something about the practice in tourism.

HOTEL BOOKING, LIST AND PRICES

The fee stated is per room, per night. Bookings will be processed on a “first come, first served” basis. After receipt of settlement, a confirmation of your booking will be sent to you, confirming the hotel reservation and the ordered services.

Hotel	Star	Room Type & Price
Continental Grand Hotel	4	Standard double room RMB 640
		Deluxe suite RMB 1, 200

Cancellation: Cancellations should be received three days prior to your proposed arrival date.

Reservations: Fax to +86 10 00003632

E-mail to dost-moc@mail.vin.com.cn

Or call + 86 10 00003591 or +86 10 00003559

HOTEL RESERVATION REQUEST FORM

Hotel: _____

Name: _____ Gender: _____

Postal Address: _____

Phone: _____ Fax: _____

E-mail: _____

Please reserve:

Room Type: _____

No. of Rooms: _____

Arrival Date: _____ Departure Date: _____

Airport Pickup: _____ Yes No

Total Payment: _____

VIII Translate the following from Chinese into English and at the same time try to get familiar with some facts concerning tourism.

A

黄山雄居于风景秀丽的皖南山区，它以“三奇四绝”的奇异风采名冠于世。1982年黄山被国务院列为首批国家级重点风景名胜区，1986年经评选列入中国十大风景名胜区，1990年被联合国教科文组织列入“世界遗产”名录。此后，黄山又相继被评选为国家级“卫生山”、“安全山”，1998年被建设部、国家旅游局等部门确定为全国首批十个文明景区之首。

黄山，古称黟山，唐天宝六年（公元747年）依轩辕黄帝曾在黄山炼丹羽化升天的传说，唐明皇敕改黟山为黄山。它地跨市内歙县、休宁、黟县和黄山区、徽州区，面积1200平方公里，现划入黄山风景区的154平方公里，是号称“五百里黄山”的精华部分。

黄山是以自然景观为特色的山岳旅游风景区，奇松、怪石、云海、温泉素称黄山“四绝”，令海内外游人叹为观止。黄山有名可数的72峰，或崔嵬雄浑，或峻峭秀丽，布局错落有致，天然巧成。天都峰、莲花峰、光明顶是黄山的三大主峰，海拔高度皆在1800米以上，并以三大主峰为中心向四周铺展，跌落为深壑幽谷，隆起成峰峦峭壁，呈现出典型的峰林地貌。

登上1800多米的高处纵览，山中奇峰汇聚，峭壁千仞，拔地擎天，峥嵘崔嵬。青松在悬崖上争奇，怪石在奇峰上斗艳，烟云在峰壑中弥漫，霞彩在岩壁上流光，自然的美在这里汇聚，在这里升华，赋予它超凡脱俗的品质，塑造出它威武雄壮的气概。在黄山的面前，时空变得狭小，沧桑变得平淡，它是大自然的骄子，独领天下奇山的风骚。故而当之无愧地赢得“登黄山天下无山，观止矣”的崇高赞誉。

B

联合国教科文组织世界遗产委员会是政府间组织，成立于1976年11月，由21名成员组成，负责《保护世界文化和自然遗产公约》的实施。委员会每年召开一次会议，主要决定哪些遗产可以录入《世界遗产名录》，并对已列入名录的世界遗产的保护工作进行监督指导。

1972年11月16日，联合国教科文组织大会第17届会议在巴黎通过了《保护世界文化和自然遗产公约》。根据该公约，设立了世界遗产委员会（World Heritage Committee）和世界遗产基金（World Heritage Fund）。世界遗产委员会由180个《保护世界文化遗产和自然遗产公约》缔约成员中的21个成员组成，委员会成员每届任期为

6年，每两年改选其中的三分之一。委员会内由7名成员构成世界遗产委员会主席团，主席团每年举行两次会议，筹备委员会的工作。

世界遗产委员会承担以下4项主要任务。

(1) 在挑选录入《世界遗产名录》的文化和自然遗产地时，负责对世界遗产的定义进行解释。在完成这项任务时，该委员会得到国际古迹遗址理事会和国际自然资源保护联盟的帮助；这两个组织仔细审查各缔约国对世界遗产的提名，并针对每一项提名写出评估报告。国际文物保护与修复研究中心也对该委员会提出建议，如文化遗产方面的培训和文物保护技术的建议。

(2) 检查世界遗产保护状况报告。当遗产得不到恰当的处理和保护时，该委员会让缔约国采取特别性保护措施。

(3) 经过与有关缔约国协商，该委员会做出决定把濒危遗产列入《濒危世界遗产名录》。

(4) 管理世界遗产基金。对为保护遗产而申请援助的国家给予技术和财力援助。

世界遗产委员会还设立了“世界遗产基金”，规定资金来源包括：“缔约国义务捐款和自愿捐款”；“其他国家、联合国教科文组织、联合国系统其他组织、其他政府间组织、公共或私立机构或个人的捐款、赠款或遗赠”；“基本款项所得利息”；“募捐的资金和为本基金组织的活动所得收入”；“基金条例所认可的其他资金”。对基金的捐款不得带有政治条件，缔约国每两年定期向世界遗产基金纳款。联合国教科文组织还专门设置了世界遗产中心，又称为“公约执行秘书处”。该中心协助缔约国具体执行《保护世界文化和自然遗产公约》，对世界遗产委员会提出建议，执行世界遗产委员会的决定。中国于1985年加入《世界遗产公约》，成为缔约方。1999年10月29日，中国当选为世界自然与文化遗产委员会成员。第28届世界遗产大会于2004年6月28日在中国江苏省的苏州市召开，此次大会的口号是“保护世界遗产，促进共同发展”。章新胜担任第28届世界遗产大会主席。2003年10月，在《世界遗产公约》缔约国第14届大会上章新胜又代表中国当选为世界遗产委员会主席。截至2005年7月，全世界共有812处文化和自然遗产被列入《世界遗产名录》。迄今中国有31处世界遗产，人类口述和非物质遗产代表作2项。

IX Try to find the website of UNESCO (the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization) and learn something about the organization.

Please refer to the following websites:

<http://whc.unesco.org>

<http://www.nhf.org>

Unit Five

Tours of Sites of Industries



Dialogues



Dialogue A



- A:** I've heard of tours of sites of industries. How does the fashion of visits to industrial sites appear?
- B:** There might be several reasons. One is that environmental protection requirements have dramatically changed industrial sites from what they used to look like.
- A:** I've noticed that. The factories where I lived nearby years ago used to be sources of pollution. Dust from the factories got into our rooms and covered the windowsills even when windows were closed. Many local residents suffered from respiratory diseases like bronchitis, tracheitis, lung cancer, or asthma. But now these factories are totally different from what they used to look like. The goals of bluer skies, clearer waters and greener land have been realized. Then what are other causes leading to such dramatic changes.
- B:** The incentive policies carried out by the government also play an important role in environmental pollution control. Have you ever heard of a term called pollutant trading?
- A:** What's it?
- B:** That's the pollutant quota system in which each factory is allocated a certain quota of

pollutant emission. If the factory does not generate that much pollution, it may sell the part it has not used in the quota to other pollutant generators, other factories in the case, so the whole matter has changed into a lucrative business, a kind of incentive to pollutant generators. They have tried their best to curb the pollution they generate. As a result, although they have greatly increased their production in recent years, twice, three times, even more as much as 10 years ago, the amount of pollutants they generate each year, on the other hand, has shown a general decline or remained as much as before.

A: It's great.

B: Meanwhile, more trees and grass have been planted, which has turned factories into parks. Probably that's why many newly developed industrial zones are also called industrial parks. So people tend to visit them like visiting parks.

A: I think I should also contribute a factor, a psychological one, to the causes. It's people's nature to get bored with the old and turn to the new. When they are tired of places of mountains, rivers, seashores, they naturally turn to something different, and then factories get into their sight.

B: Probably that's also a cause. We are in a time of high technology, and we should not look like idiots in front of high-tech products, so from time to time we have to update our knowledge and a visit to a factory can certainly meet our curiosity and demand for new knowledge.

Dialogue B



(G = guest, C = cashier)

G: Good morning. I'd like to check out. My name is Dan Millison. Room 1124. I want to check out.

C: Good morning, Mr. Millison. Let me check your consumptions in our hotel. Just a minute, and I'll prepare your bill. Here you are. That's the total amount payable at the bottom there.

G: I can't believe it. I'm sure that's too much. Perhaps there's a mistake. Could you go

- through it with me?
- C:** Yes, of course. You see it is an itemized bill, and we can easily track down a mistake if there is one. That's the basic room rate, you've been here since Monday morning. That makes three nights and the apartment change is repeated three times. So there is no problem there. These are for meals and drinks that you signed for.
- G:** Yes. They look all right. I did eat in the restaurant six times and had a few drinks in the bar beside the swimming pool. But how come here is such a large sum?
- C:** That's for long distance calls that you made yourself.
- G:** Yes. But I've only made a few calls, each lasting no more than five minutes.
- C:** In China, charges for international calls are much higher than in the other states.
- G:** Yes. I forgot it. How shall I pay the bill, in cash or by traveller's cheques?
- C:** As you like.
- G:** But I don't have that much cash with me right now. I'll pay by traveller's cheques? Here are the cheques.
- C:** Would you please fill in the cheques and countersign them?
- G:** All right. Here you are.
- C:** Thank you. May I have a look at your passport?
- G:** Here you are.
- C:** (Giving it back after checking.) I'm sorry to have kept you waiting. Would you please sign here?
- G:** Yes.
- C:** Thank you. Here is your receipt. I hope to see you again.

Reading Material



A sewage treatment plant is a place where the used water from homes or industrial processes is treated until it reaches the requirement for discharge. First of all, this kind of installation or equipment is part of an industrial process at the time when a factory or an industrial complex is designed or one attached to urban development project when residential quarters are built. The equipment for air pollution control, water pollution control and waste material control is designed at the same time as an industrial project is designed. This is

called the simultaneity principle for launching an industrial project, which is to say the installation for pollution control attached to an industrial project should be designed, built and put into operation simultaneously as the production part, so the waste water treatment, as a component of the whole pollution control effort, is always on the agenda and given priority in the effort because water is becoming more and more precious as a natural resource. The recycled water in compliance with the national standard can be reused in industrial processes, for irrigation, in swimming pools, for washing vehicles. This endeavor helps solve the problem of water shortage in part.

When you come into such a treatment plant, you will see several pools that are linked one after another. The dirty water is led into the first pool, where a machine striding across the pool goes back and forth, like a crane used at a dock. It is a scraper, skimming off the froth on the surface of the dirty water. The first pool used here is a sediment pool where not only the froth is skimmed off, but the heavier substances in the dirty water settle to the bottom of the pool. The sediment and the froth collected will be further processed chemically into organic fertilizer.

The water after the first treatment is still not ready for reuse, and it is pumped or flows into the second pool, where the water is splashed or sprayed as much as possible, exposing the water to the air. This process is designed to kill the anaerobic bacteria. The principle behind this process is that bacteria are divided into two



kinds: aerobic bacteria and anaerobic bacteria. The former likes air, while the latter dislikes air. By spraying the water, the contact with air will effectively kill the anaerobic bacteria.

After that, the water flows into the next pool, where a lot of slag, the byproduct of steel making, is stored, and the water absorbed by the porous lumps of slag. These lumps are submerged in the water; the process sufficiently kills the aerobic bacteria. The lumps are frequently replaced when they are saturated with silt to ensure the work is done efficiently.

When the water has gone through these procedures, if it still contains some harmful chemicals, some additives are added to clean them away until it is clean enough for irrigation use or washing vehicles or industrial processes. When the water is recycled and used again, the cost of industrial production is dramatically reduced. When irrigation is done with the recycled water, the cost is lowered, so that more can be spent on trees and grass, which can in turn clean the polluted air, thus achieving the goal of environmental protection.



- 1 **how come** : American slang. How can it be like that? (怎么回事?) It is frequently used in asking somebody when one is in surprise.
How come he did not come as he had promised? 他怎么没有如约而至?
- 2 **lead to ...** : result in
His laziness led to his failure in the examination. 他的懒散导致他考试失利。
- 3 **carry out** : implement
We must carry out the Party's guideline for the reform and opening to the outside world.
我们必须贯彻党的改革开放的方针。
- 4 **pollutant trading** : a new idea and practice that serves to use the incentive policy to curb the rise of pollutant emission to the environment the world over. The principle of pollutant trading is that each pollutant producer, usually an industrial enterprise, is allocated a set quota of pollutant emission, below which it will not be fined, the saved part or proportion can be sold to other pollutant producers that can not meet the requirement for compliance with the set quota.
- 5 **contribute ... to** : do one's bit for ...
The Chinese nation has contributed much to the world civilization with its inventions of black explosive, the compass, the printing technique and paper making. 中华民族用火药、指南针、印刷术和造纸术对世界文明贡献巨大。
- 6 **get bored with** : be tired of; no longer be keen on
When you bury yourself into books for more than four hours, you may get bored with reading. Then you need something else for a change. 当你埋头读书超过4小时,你会厌倦读下去,就需要干其他事情调剂一下。
- 7 **turn to ...** : go and apply for
Having worked on the math exercise for several hours, he still had some questions unsolved. He naturally turned to his classmates for help. 做了好几个小时数学题了,他还有几个题没有做出,自然去找同学寻求帮助。
- 8 **be tired of** : lose interest in
He is tired of school life of a triangle, from the dormitory to the teaching building, then

to the canteen. So he has decided to work after graduation instead of continuing his education for a higher degree. 他厌倦了宿舍、教学楼到餐厅的三点一线式学校生活, 所以他决定毕业后工作, 不再继续学习, 得个更高的学位。

9 *get into one's sight*: gradually appear

When the fog receded, a spectacular ancient castle got into his sight.

当浓雾散去, 一座壮丽的古城堡映入了他的眼帘。

10 *from time to time*: occasionally

The old lady heard of the death of her friends from time to time, which made her aware that her days were also numbered. 老太太不时听到她朋友们的死讯, 意识到她也来日不多了。

11 *attach to*: add something to something else

He nimbly attached a tag to the coffee box on the shelf for sale.

他麻利地给架上的咖啡壶贴上了一个销售标签。

12 *on the agenda*: in the schedule ready for settlement

Now the construction of a great dam is on the agenda, so the project will start early next year. 现在大坝建设已经列入议程, 项目将于明年开始。

13 *give priority to*: to do something earlier than other things

We must give priority to national defense in such a turbulent world with our enemies trying to block our country's development. 处在动乱的世界中, 敌人想阻挠我们的发展, 我们必须优先注重国防。

14 *in compliance with*: meeting the requirement for something

All our export products have gone through strict inspection and examination, so they are in compliance with the most stringent international standards. 我们所有的出口产品经过严格的检查, 符合最苛刻的国际标准。

15 *in part*: partially, incompletely

His parents' indulgence in part leads to his failure in his studies.

他父母的溺爱部分地导致了他学习上的失败。

16 *skim off*: remove floating matter off the surface of a liquid

The machine automatically skims off the pollutants floating on the surface of the water at a speed of 200 tons an hour. 该机器以每小时 200 吨的速度清理水面漂浮的污染物。

17 *settle to*: get to the bottle

The sand settles to the bottom of the pool when the water inside does not flow.

当内部水不流时, 沙子沉到池子的底部。

18 *be ready for*: well prepared for

The volunteers are now ready for serving the games.

志愿者们已做好准备，为运动会服务。

- 19** *expose ... to ...* : put something or somebody in a position open to the outside attack, influence, etc.

In summer, don't expose yourself directly to the sunshine. 夏季不要直接暴露在阳光下。

- 20** *be saturated with* : be filled with to the extent no longer sth. is able to absorb

They lay on the beach and were saturated with sunshine. 他们躺在沙滩上，饱享阳光。

- 21** *ensure that* : make sure

You have to ensure that your personal belongings should be kept in your sight while you are having your meal lest they be stolen. 吃饭时，务必让自己的物品在视线范围内，以免失窃。

- 22** *go through* : experience

These veterans have gone through the ups and downs of the revolution.

这些老战士经历了革命的风风雨雨。

- 23** *in turn* : one after another

They queued up in front of the shop, and bought the newly marketed mobile phones in turn. 他们在商店门前排队，购买新上市的手机。

• Exercises



- I** Try to read the following words and expressions taken from the text and fill the brackets with the corresponding phonetic symbols. You may look them up in your dictionary and pay attention to the relation between spellings and phonetic symbols.

sill	[]	<i>n.</i>	the part of a window, on which small objects can be placed
respiratory	[]	<i>a.</i>	of part of the breathing organs
bronchitis	[]	<i>n.</i>	inflammation of the bronchial tubes
tracheitis	[]	<i>n.</i>	inflammation of the tracheal tubes
asthma	[]	<i>n.</i>	a condition often of allergic origin, marked by continuous or paroxysmal labored breathing accompanied by

			wheezing, by a sense of constriction in the chest, and often by attacks of coughing or gasping
sewage	[]	<i>n.</i>	refuse liquids or waste matter carried off by sewers
slag	[]	<i>n.</i>	the dross or scoria of a metal
lump	[]	<i>n.</i>	a piece or mass of indefinite size and shape
aerobic	[]	<i>a.</i>	living, active, or occurring only in the presence of oxygen
anaerobic	[]	<i>a.</i>	living, active, occurring, or existing in the absence of free oxygen
scraper	[]	<i>n.</i>	a device that removes something from a surface by usually repeated strokes of an edged instrument
submerge	[]	<i>v.</i>	to put under water
silt	[]	<i>n.</i>	a deposit of sediment
saturate	[]	<i>v.</i>	to fill completely with something that permeates or pervades

II Give definitions to the given words.

1. What is meant by sill? What do you place on it?
2. What is meant by respiratory? What does the respiratory system consist of?
3. What is the meaning of bronchitis? In what season of the year, are people likely to catch bronchitis?
4. What is the meaning of tracheitis? What is the difference between bronchitis and tracheitis?
5. What is slag? Where is it likely to be found?
6. What is meant by sewage? What is a sewage system used for?
7. What is meant by aerobic?
8. What is meant by anaerobic?
9. Describe when somebody is submerged for a long time, what will happen to him.
10. Describe when a lump of sponger is saturated with water what will happen to it.

III Discuss the following questions with your classmates.

1. What is the purpose of industrial tourism?
2. Why did industrial tourism come into fashion?
3. What good can industrial tourism bring about?

8. A slum area _____ be turned into a scenic spot for tourism.
 A. can B. can't C. must D. mustn't
9. Land reclamation is suitable for _____ .
 A. opening cutting mining areas and refusing dumping areas
 B. underground mining areas without refusing dumping
 C. opening cutting mining areas only
 D. refusing dumping areas only
10. Sustainable development has to be in compliance with _____ .
 A. ecological protection B. birth control
 C. economic exploration of energy D. All the above

V Match the words or expressions in the following columns.

A	B
green for grain campaign	清洁生产
cleaner production	退耕还林还草运动
PM 10	总悬浮物
TSP	可吸入颗粒物
sulphur dioxide	一氧化碳
carbon monoxide	二氧化硫
carbon dioxide	酸雨
acid rain	二氧化碳
desertification	京都议定书
Kyoto Protocol	沙漠化
greenhouse effect	污染物排放交易
pollutant emission trading	温室效应

VI Match the following phrases in their proper forms with the sentences below the square.

how come	lead to	expose . . . to . . .	in part
in turn	be ready for	skim off	be saturated with
ensure that	go through	carry out	settle to

in compliance with	from time to time	get bored with	be tired of
turn to	get into the sight of	contribute . . . to	give priority to
attach . . . to	on the agenda		

1. _____ he did not come with you?
2. Smoking _____ lung cancer.
3. When an iron piece _____ the air, soon it rusts.
4. We help each other _____.
5. He has _____ greatly _____ the economic development in this city.
6. When you _____ living in a city, you should try to move to another or to the countryside for a change.
7. We must _____ clean water, clothing, a shelter and adequate medicine are provided to the people who have lost their homes in the floods.
8. At this critical moment, who else could they _____ for help? Of course, only their government.
9. The driver at least should be _____ responsible for the accident.
10. He soon _____ an easy and comfortable life and threw himself into the development of the West.
11. When you _____ the work, please inform me, so we can start to do it together at the same time.
12. They were frightened by the explosions _____.
13. All these food products are strictly _____ the national standards.
14. When land _____ water, a landslide is likely to occur.
15. Sand starts to _____ the riverbed when the speed of the water slows down.
16. You have to _____ various kinds of tests before you are accepted as a full member of the association.
17. A small boat _____ the guard in fog early in the morning.
18. We must _____ our plan so that the task can be accomplished on time.
19. You have to _____ the froth on the surface of the boiling water, and then cook the meat for another half an hour before it is served.
20. As a student, you should _____ your studies. Don't get too busy with student union activities.
21. In developing tourism, we should _____ great importance _____

environmental protection for a sustainable development of tourism.

22. Light rail construction is _____ of the municipal development as it is getting more and more crowded and traffic jams have become a headache of the city administrators.

VII Translate the following passage into Chinese with a view to knowing something about the practice in tourism.

The Olympic Games is soon to be held in Beijing, so the historical Chinese catering culture will show paces again. Yet in the language environment construction for the Beijing Olympic Games, menu translation has turned out to be a headache to many experts.

Anyone who has ever been abroad must know it is difficult to order dishes in a foreign restaurant as many names of dishes and their main and auxiliary ingredients are strange to you. This is usually solved as most Chinese do not order big courses in most cases. But for foreigners, they are known for enjoying Chinese food, and will run into big trouble when it comes to ordering dishes which they enjoy so much. Such dishes known as “fuqifeipian”, “gongbaojiding”, “lazijiding” are dishes handed down over generations and known to every Chinese, but it is too difficult to make them understood by foreigners. Not long, a joke got spread about a quite indecent translation of “tongziji”.

The difficulty in menu translation is largely due to its containing too much Chinese cultural implication as the dish of “fotiaoqiang” bears an allusion in it. It is too cumbersome a job to make everything behind clear. As we know well that a menu only serves the purpose of providing an indication to the dish for service and its translation can not be translated into too long a paragraph, but if translated verbatim a joke as mentioned would be inevitable. Nor can the dishes like “fuqifeipian” be translated literally. Though many experts have been invited to the work of menu translation and Beijing Municipal Bureau of Tourism is soliciting ideas for the matter, but so far still no very satisfactory plan has been taken shape, which is easy to understand.

Liu Yang, deputy director of the Foreign Affairs Office of Beijing Municipal Government, has proffered a principle for menu translation characterized by simplicity and practicality to the largest possibility. He puts out that hotels and restaurants had better supply some pictures for their dishes in their menus, so once the names of dishes have got their well acknowledged translations supplemented with the photos and explanations of the main and auxiliary ingredients, it won't make our foreign friends puzzled over the names of dishes.

VIII Translate the following passages into English and at the same time try to get familiar with some facts concerning tourism.

A

该公司是由国家特大型企业——某化工（集团）有限责任公司独家发起以募集方式设立，在某省工商行政管理局登记注册的上市公司，于1997年9月首次发行社会流通股1000万股，并于10月17日在深交所上市。股票简称：××氯碱；股票代码：×××××。该公司下设氯碱厂、树脂厂、聚醚厂三个生产厂及供销总公司与职能部门。该公司持有鹿岛锦化聚氯乙烯有限公司36%的股权，持有鹿岛光明化工储运有限公司20%的股权。公司现有离子膜烧碱实际生产能力已达30万吨，国内行业排名第二；聚氯乙烯生产能力为30万吨，国内行业排名第五位；环氧丙烷产品实际生产能力达20万吨，聚醚10万吨，使得公司的环氧丙烷系列产品的生产能力居国内第一位，亚洲第一位。公司现有氯化苯生产装置一套，年生产能力两万吨，国内行业排名第二；三氯乙烯生产装置一套，年生产能力0.6万吨，国内行业排名第二。

B

××公司由××有色金属冶炼厂改制。该公司是国家大型一档企业××有色金属冶炼厂、××稀有金属材料研究院经资产重组后发起设立，体制和机制完全符合现代企业制度要求的全国最大的钽铌科研、生产企业，是世界钽冶炼三强企业之一。该公司是稀有稀土金属集团公司直管的大型一档企业，是国家重点有色工业企业和××自治区重点扶持的10家企业之一，是国内最大的钽铌产品生产厂家和科技先导型的钽铌研究中心，是国内唯一的钽材研制和加工基地，是国际钽铌研究中心（TIC）组织的正式成员，1998年被科技部认定为国家重点高新技术企业。该公司是我国国防工业、核能工业、航天航空工业、电子工业、冶金工业、化学工业和科学研究等领域里一个极其重要的钽、铌、钽高技术新材料供应基地和出口外向型高新技术企业。该公司1999年销售收入7亿元，产品增加到46个系列206个品种。“八五”期间，共完成科研课题121项，国家新产品试制项目31项，国家重大技术改造项目3项，开发了23个系列126多种钽、铌、钽新产品，有11个新产品被国家科委等五部委批准为国家级新产品，有17项重大科技成果获得国家和省部级科技成果奖。特别是“超高比容钽粉”、“中高压高比容钽粉”、“钽电容器阳极引线用钽丝”三个国家级重点技术改造项目完成后，使电容器级钽粉、钽丝成为了企业的主导产品。1998年钽粉、钽丝销量分别占世界总销量的10%、35%，工艺技术、产品档次和质量国内领先、世界先进，与美国CABOT集团、德国HCST集团并列世界钽业三强。该公司于1997年通过ISO 9002质量体系认证。

- IX** Try to find the websites of ABB, IBM and Nokia and know something about industrial enterprises.

Please refer to the following websites:

www.c-water.com.cn

www.clii.com.cn

www.cfiin.com

www.autoinfo.gov.cn

www.chnbia.com

www.cnecc.com

www.mei.net.cn

Unit Six

Tours of Sites of Agriculture



Dialogues



Dialogue A



- A:** Have you noticed that in recent years villages both in suburban areas and in remote areas have been changing into hot tourist spots. Can you give me some reasons for this development?
- B:** There may be several reasons contributing to this development. First and foremost, we have to attribute it to the ever rising standard of the urban people's material and cultural life. With some disposable income, they naturally turn their eyes to the countryside especially when they are tired of the urban life and the usual places of tourist spots that they frequent. In a word, they need a change, don't they?
- A:** It sounds reasonable. Then what are other reasons?
- B:** Transportation has been improving rapidly, which has made the countryside accessible to urban dwellers. Can you imagine how tourists trudge in rainy days on a muddy road or in sunny days on a dusty road that leads to a village?
- A:** I can't indeed.
- B:** On the other hand, cars are going into usual families. So on holidays, especially on long holidays such as May Day, National Day or Spring Festival holidays, private car owners can have easy access to places within a radius of 500 to 1,000 kilometers,

which is certainly facilitated by a network of expressways that connect different places.

- A:** I heard that China now claims the second biggest network of expressways, only next to the United States. Is it true?
- B:** You're correct. But soon, China will take over the United States to be the number one country in the total length of expressways.
- A:** Besides, will you tell me, as I have never been to a village for a trip, in what ways villagers entertain their visitors?
- B:** It depends. In pastures, herdsman may entertain their visitors with a horse race, or nomadic song and dance performances, a service of a roasted whole sheep or even a whole beef bull, an experience of staying over night in a tent. Anyway, it's difference that counts.
- A:** How about suburban villagers? What will they do to entertain their visitors?
- B:** In many ways, for instance, they may make available to their visitors some of their bedrooms that are decorated totally different from urban dwellers' usual residence. A kang, a kind of bed, for example, is a favorite of visitors in the north of the country, as it is cool in summer and warm in winter because there is a winding tunnel built beneath the surface of it for the draft of air. It is cool in summer for natural air circulation and warm in winter with a fire kept burning in the brick-built oven connected to the kang, drawing the hot air constantly into the tunnel connected to a chimney built outside of the house. For villages in the south, their narrow winding waterways flanked by stooping willows twigs through the villages always lend themselves to a sense of tranquility and coolness.
- A:** How about villages in the northwest, what advantages do they have?
- B:** They have their advantages that others do not have. For example, caves that they have had for their residence for thousands of years are especially enjoyable residence. They are cool in summer and warm in winter because the thick layer of loess that is the sticky yellow earth serves as a very good kind of insulation material to keep the cold from entering in winter and heat from entering in summer. You know something like the basement in the west for storing wine. The songs and dances there are heroic and magnificent, touching the heart and soul of a listener. The music there has big drums, gongs and cymbals in for accompaniment, heart-throbbing . . .
- A:** It's really interesting and great. I can't help going for a trip myself.
- B:** I have endless stories to tell you about those villages. But I'm busy today, and I would like to tell you more some time later, OK?

A: Of course. Thank you for your informative talk.

Dialogue B

(**M = maid**, **G = guest**)

M: Housekeeping. May I come in?

G: Yes. Come in.

M: I'm sorry to disturb you. May I make up the room now, Mr. Millison?

G: Sure. But try to be quick. A friend of mine will come here in a few minutes to talk with me.

M: No problem. Just feel at ease. By the way, what else can I do for you?

G: Some hot water and some fruit.

M: What about some oranges?

G: That's OK. Thank you.

M: Here is a flask of hot water for you and fruit as well. Do I need to make up your room after your friend has left?

G: No. Anyway, thank you.

M: It's my pleasure.

Reading Material

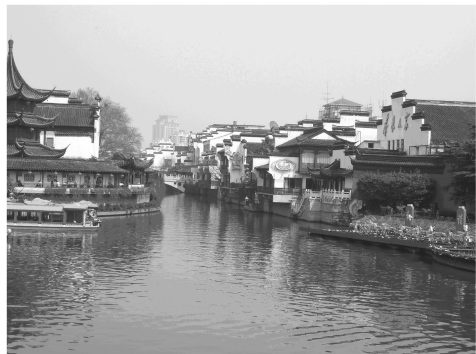
Nowadays agritourism is having its day when trips to scenic spots have had their day. It is just like a saying that each thing can have its day for some time, but nothing can have its day forever. When people are tired of fine, exquisite food, they turn to coarse food like oatmeal; when they are fed up with common vegetables, they turn to potherbs, so when beaches, valleys, hills no longer take their fancy, they focus their attention on an unexplored resort- the countryside, where an idyllic life awaits them, peaceful, pleasant, simple, away from the madding crowd of urban life and worldly vanity. Even just a few days from what

they are used to and return to nature will get them relaxed from their strain so that they can renew their strength for a fresh comeback, back to their work, their studies, and their life struggle in a throat-cutting competition.

Then are the villagers of these village resorts ready to accept swarms of urban visitors and what can they do to satiate these fussy visitors? Undoubtedly, farmers who have gone through those ups and downs in more than 20 years of economic reform are readily adjusting themselves to a role change from being merely engaged in farming, a sector of the first industry, to being engaged in tourism, agritourism in particular, a sector of the third or tertiary industry. This way, they have turned a large proportion of agricultural population to non-agricultural sectors, thus making the conventional agriculture more concentrated in a small proportion of agricultural population to enable agricultural mechanization.

In villages, farmers' houses are turned into guestrooms, mostly decorated in a traditional Chinese style. The style is fading rapidly in cities and is going to die out in a number of years when cement forests are becoming the skylines of most Chinese cities. High rises are mushrooming and cities are sprawling at an increasing speed like thin paste in a frying pan. Many things are westernized, so are most people. Anything traditional, or national spares a sense of nostalgia for them, like lacquered screens that partition a room, paper-cuttings, tin-pots and what not all attract visitors from cities. Domesticated animals or fowls like pigs, sheep, cows, bulls, chickens, ducks and geese are so endearing to city children. Fresh vegetables and fruits appeal more to urban dwellers when they are scared by the vegetables or fruits that are cultivated with chemical fertilizers and insecticides, all being cancer-inducing as spoken by them.

Suburban agritourism is different from that in far-flung rural areas in that the former is much more limited in land resources, which forces a more concentrated use of land. Cows are stabled, chickens are cooped and vegetables and fruits are grown in greenhouses so that their products can be doubled, tripled, even quadrupled. Visitors to such farms can get into such farming facilities after careful disinfection, a quarantine process to ensure that no external bacteria are brought into those



facilities. By so doing, visitors are not only seeing something in growth, but also practice doing the manual labor to get the joy from it. In seasons of harvest, they have relish in

picking fruits or vegetables. They pay for their harvests as much as they buy them from a supermarket, but they prefer to do so because it is here on a farm they can pay to get the joy from labor. In far-flung rural areas, visitors may listen to the barks of dogs, chirps of birds or moo of cows in otherwise a total quietness of nature. During the day, they may get dressed up like cowboys, hiking or frolicking. At night they may dance around a campfire singing and clapping hands to their hearts' content. All three meals of a day are well cooked by their hosts, fresh and delicious. The guests sometimes may be invited to join the hosts in making their food.

The countryside is always the last bastion that keeps the convention of everything. The visitors may witness traditional wedding ceremonies or funerals, and may hear a lot of folk stories or legendary tales. They may hear what are propitious or what are not; they may take them as superstition or hearsay. The guests may also learn some knacks from local residents like paper-cutting, walking on stilts, singing folksongs, etc. Anyway, a trip to the countryside is always a rewarding one. Once you have made one, you will never be regretful for it.



- 1 **urban**: of the area that is totally occupied by the non-agricultural buildings and residents. Urban is used in opposition to rural.
- 2 **suburban**: of the area that is occupied by both the non-agricultural and agricultural buildings and residents
- 3 **reason for**: a fixed expression. Pay attention to the use of “for” after “reason”.
The reason for his being late is that his mother fell ill and he had to accompany her to the hospital. 他迟到的原因是母亲生病了，他得陪她去医院。
- 4 **first and foremost**: before all else; in the first place
First and foremost, you have to develop yourself morally. 首先，你得学会做人。
- 5 **in a word**: used for giving a very short, usually negative, answer or comment
In a word, reform is in the fundamental interests of the majority of the Chinese people.
总之，改革有利于绝大多数中国老百姓。
- 6 **sound reasonable**: pay attention to the adjective used after a link verb and a verb associated

with senses. Such verbs as look, taste, feel, smell are used in the same way.

This peanut jam smells good and tastes delicious. 花生酱又香又好吃。

- 7 **be accessible to sth.** : enable somebody to have access to sth.

The roof of the greenhouse is easily accessible to a gardener as it is constructed of I-shaped steel beams for easy repair and operation. 为了使温室容易维修和运行, 因此用工字钢梁构建, 这样园丁可以轻易到达温室顶部。

- 8 **have access to sth./sb.** : be able to reach or get into contact with

It is said that he has access to the top leaders. 据说他手眼通天。

A gardener has easy access to the roof of the greenhouse with the help of a stepladder. 用梯子园丁能轻易地上到温室顶部。

- 9 **entertain somebody with something** : receive somebody as a guest with food or drinks served

He entertained his guests with local delicacies. 他用地方风味菜款待客人。

- 10 **It's difference that counts.** : It's different that is more important.

- 11 **make something available to somebody** : market or sell something to somebody

- 12 **serve as** : be in the capacity of

He served the delegation as interpreter. 他为代表团做翻译。

- 13 **can't help doing** : can not refrain oneself from doing something

He couldn't help crying on hearing the death of his aunt.

听到姑妈去世的消息, 他放声痛哭。

- 14 **have one's day** : have a period of success. When day is used with a possessive pronoun like his, one's, her or its, it refers to a period of success.

She was a beauty in her day. (Implying that she used to be beautiful before she is old.)

她年轻时是个美人。

Even a dog has its day. 失意之人也有得意之时。

- 15 **be fed up with** : be tired of or be bored with

He is fed up with the greasy food, and now likes fresh fruit and vegetables.

他厌倦了油腻食物, 现在喜欢吃新鲜的水果和蔬菜。

- 16 **take one's fancy** : please or attract somebody

That fashionable dress took her fancy. 她很中意那件时髦的连衣裙。

- 17 **satiate somebody with something** : satisfy somebody with something completely or to the full

The tiger was satiated with its grand meal of half a deer. 半只鹿的大餐使得这只老虎大快朵颐。

- 18 **ups and downs** : different periods of defeats and victories

They have experienced the ups and downs of the Chinese Revolution, and now are more

confident of its final victory.

19 *adjust oneself to something*: change oneself so as to suit something

We have to adjust ourselves in this new period of the reform to the change in our positions. 我们得调整自己的位置以适应改革新时期的需要。

20 *engage in*: take part in; participate in

We shall all engage in the Olympic promotion to make more people know about Olympics before the 29th Olympic Games is held in Beijing. 29 届北京奥运会举办之前,我们将致力于推广奥林匹克运动,使更多的人对奥林匹克运动增进了解。

21 *in particular*: especially

Old people are more likely visited by some diseases, cardiovascular ones in particular. That is why we see more old people exercise than young people as they want to promote their health and do not want to become their children's burden. 对老年人来说,有些病容易找上门,尤其是心血管疾病,那就是为什么我们总看到老年人比年轻人更多地锻炼身体,保持健康,他们不想成为孩子的负担。

22 *appeal to somebody*: make an earnest request to sb.

The government appealed to the kidnappers for an immediate negotiation on the release of the hostages. 政府吁请绑架者尽快举行谈判,释放人质。

23 *have relish in*: have a liking for

Never have relish in the fairy power of unreflecting love!

甬在寻死觅活的爱情仙花上寻找幸福!

24 *get dressed up*: put on special clothes

The children got themselves dressed up as pirates. 孩子们装扮成海盗。

25 *be regretful for something*: with remorse for; have a bitter feeling for the wrong doing

Kitty knows all the truth and feels regretful for committing suicide.

凯蒂了解所有的真相,后悔当初不该自杀。

• **Exercises**



- I** Try to read the following words and expressions taken from the text and fill the brackets with the corresponding phonetic symbols. You may look them up in your dictionary and pay attention to the relation between spellings and phonetic

symbols.

have one's day			be lucky
nostalgia	[]	<i>n.</i>	homesickness; reminiscence of the past
stable	[]	<i>v.</i>	keep in a place
frolic	[]	<i>v.</i>	play in a noisy way
disinfect	[]	<i>v.</i>	kill or remove bacteria and virus to one's heart's content; satisfied
knack	[]	<i>n.</i>	ingenious way of doing things
far-flung	[]	<i>a.</i>	extensive; remote
hearsay	[]	<i>n.</i>	rumor
quarantine	[]	<i>n.</i>	separation
		<i>vt.</i>	separate for the purpose of isolating the contaminated material from getting into contact with the population
heart-throbbing	[]	<i>a.</i>	exciting
gong	[]	<i>n.</i>	kind of percussion instrument made of bronze and played with a stick
cymbal	[]	<i>n.</i>	kind of percussion instrument made of bronze and played in pairs to strike each other
mechanization	[]	<i>n.</i>	process or result of using machines to complete a production task
propitious	[]	<i>n.</i>	favorable; well-displayed
accompaniment	[]	<i>n.</i>	process of accompanying a singer or musical instrument player
relish	[]	<i>n.</i>	liking or zest

II Give definitions to the mentioned words or expressions.

1. What is meant by "have one's day"?
2. What is a knack?
3. What does quarantine mean?
4. How do you define a gong?
5. How do people play cymbals?
6. How do people act when frolicking?

5. Which of the following four expressions is appropriate?
- A. He published a poem singing praises of the beauty of the mountains and waters in his hometown.
 - B. He published a poem which sings praises of the beauty of the mountains and waters in his hometown.
 - C. He published a poem to sing praises of the beauty of the mountains and waters in his hometown.
 - D. He published a poem sings praises of the beauty of the mountains and waters in his hometown.
6. Which of the following four expressions is appropriate?
- A. He saw a film entitled A Town Named Hibiscus.
 - B. He saw a film, which was entitled A Town Named Hibiscus.
 - C. He saw a film to be entitled A Town Named Hibiscus.
 - D. He saw a film entitle A Town Named Hibiscus.
7. Which of the following four expressions is appropriate?
- A. All the villagers here now enjoy free medical care.
 - B. All the villagers here are now entitled to free medical care.
 - C. All villagers here now entitle free medical care.
 - D. All villagers now here are now entitle to free medical care.
8. Which of the following four expressions in NOT correct?
- A. Cabbages. B. Carrots. C. Eggplants. D. Spinach.
9. Which of the following four expressions is correct?
- A. 20 head of cattle. B. 20 heads of cattle.
 - C. 20 head cattle. D. 20 heads of cattles.
10. Which of the following four expressions is idiomatic?
- A. They are now taking more measures to further their reform.
 - B. They are now taking more measures to deepen their reform.
 - C. They are now deepening their reform with more measures.
 - D. They are now taking more measures for deepened reform.

V Match the words or expressions in the following columns.

A

batik
brocade

B

手工艺
织锦

carve	民族的
craftsmanship	蜡染
embroidery	刺绣
ethnic	雕刻
craft	玉器
artefact	景泰蓝
knit	编织
lacquer	陶器
pottery	漆
cloisonné	手工艺品
jade articles	工艺

VI Match the following phrases in their proper forms with the sentences below the square.

reason for	get dressed up	be regretful for	have relish in
appeal to . . .	first and foremost	be accessible to	have access to
ups and downs	entertain . . . with . . .	be fed up with	that counts
in a word	serve as	in particular	take one's fancy
engage in	satiate . . . with . . .		

1. It is development _____.
2. They _____ charity activities as they can't help feeling sorry for those people, who become homeless in a natural disaster.
3. _____ I have to stress I apologize to you for your age but not for your argument.
4. Now even the children in land-locked mountain villages _____ the Internet to know about what is happening at this moment in the world.
5. They _____ have only strengthened their determination in carrying out their experiment.
6. Now books, both printed and electronic, _____ all the children in this small country.
7. The local people are so hospitable to the visitors. They _____ them _____ all the local delicacies they themselves usually save for festivals.
8. _____ what you have said is merely nonsense to us.

9. Children _____ as angels before the visitors came to their village for relief.
10. They now _____ their failure to develop tourism two years ago when they saw the prosperity of their neighboring villages in the regard.
11. After a short period of language training, these young girls and boys _____ tour guides in the village.
12. The far-flung areas _____ are endowed with beautiful sceneries and an unpolluted environment for developing tourism.
13. Soon the karst topography _____ their _____ because they have never seen such areas before.
14. They seem never _____ what they have seen.
15. Young as he is, he has made up his mind to _____ politics.
16. The fantastic scenery here _____ these tourists from abroad.
17. He _____ his parents' inculcations, so he left home to join the army.
18. You may _____ what you have done, but I insist that you apologize to your teacher.

VII As in many cases, you may dwell in a local resident's or a student's dormitory room, you may be informed of the following obligations. Please read them and try to put them into Chinese.

Maintenance of the Rented Accommodation

1. The tenant is obliged to take good care of, to maintain and to regularly clean the rented rooms as well as the inventory provided by the lessor. The tenant is obliged to always maintain the rented accommodation in a habitable condition.
2. The lessor or his representative is to be immediately informed of any damage caused to and/or within the house and in the rented accommodation.
3. The tenant is liable for any damage to objects (buildings and inventory) administered by the lessor which are caused by infringement of the duty to take due care incumbent on the tenant. The tenant is likewise liable for damage caused by his/her visitors.
4. The lessor is allowed to carry out repairs/improvements or constructional modifications which become necessary to maintain the house or the rented rooms, to prevent impending dangers or to rectify damage without the tenant's consent.
5. The tenant is obliged to use electricity and water economically.

Tenant's Further Obligations

1. The tenant is obliged not to disturb other occupants or neighbours between 10:00 p. m. and 8:00 a. m.
2. Keeping animals is principally forbidden.
3. The tenant has to strictly adhere to all regulations by the building inspection authorities and those for fire prevention. In particular, storage of easily inflammable and poisonous materials is forbidden.

VIII Translate the following passages into English and at the same time try to get familiar with some facts concerning tourism.

A

江苏省江阴县华西村距无锡30多公里,距苏州50多公里。华西村原本是一个只有80户、1520人、面积0.96平方公里的小村庄,现在和周围的16个村组成了大华西村,面积由原来的0.96平方公里扩大到30平方公里,人口由原来的2000多人增加到3万多人。每年吸引海内外百万游客前来观光旅游。其旅游收入将突破5000万元。是什么吸引了如此众多的观光客呢?他们来这里看什么呢?

参观者中有取经的,有观光的。取经的是要看华西村如何从一个名不见经传的贫穷村庄变成了一个蜚声中外的中国第一村,如何变成了中国农村走共同富裕道路的典型。1996年农业部评定华西村为全国大型一档乡镇企业。从2001年起,吴仁宝和华西人创造性地提出了“一分五统”。2004年,华西村人均工资收入12.26万元。同年全国农民人均纯收入2936元,城镇居民人均可支配收入9422元。华西人的收入是全国农民的41.76倍、城镇居民的13.01倍。村党委书记吴仁宝在集体经济取得了巨大进步的时候,自己却没有对个人的收入有超过别人的要求。当全村的人都住进别墅的时候,他还住在比别人小得多的房子里。他有一个口头禅:家有黄金数吨,一天只吃三餐,纵然有宫殿,睡觉只占一床。他吃苦在群众前面,享福在群众后面,给全村的群众和党员树立了一面先进共产党员的旗帜。

走进华西村,引人注目的是一个塔。该塔是村里1996年花1.24亿元修建的华西塔,塔尖包金,是华西村的标志性建筑。华西村和全国所有的农村一样,改革前的华西大队,在上世纪六十年代就是我国农村的先进典型,那时,我国农村普遍实行“三级所有,队为基础”的核算方式(公社、大队、生产队三级所有,以生产队为基本核算单位),华西村实行大队统一核算。上世纪七十年代末我国农村推行“联产承包责任

制”的改革，华西村顶着很大的压力还是实行大队核算。在我国农村取消人民公社后，华西大队改为华西村。

吴仁宝从上世纪六十年代担任华西村的书记，带领全村人走上了共同富裕的道路。2005年，全村实现销售超300亿元，每户村民的存款最低100万元。除了取经的人群外，观光客是冲着华西村创造了其独具特色的“文化游”、“三农游”、“教育游”而来。在这里，游客们可以看到包括华西公园、华西金塔、华西民族宫、江南田园风光旅游在内的80多个旅游景点。精明的华西人还不失时机地组建了旅游公司，发展旅游业。在南京、上海等大城市举办华西村旅游推介会，在村里举办旅游节。依托“天下第一村”在国内外的巨大影响，大打社会主义农村特色旅游牌，既向海内外展示了中国社会主义新农村的风貌，也取得了巨大的经济效益。今天的华西人，家家住上了四五百平方米的别墅，每户最少资产都在100万元以上。华西村新建的12幢农民别墅，每幢的造型与风格都不一样，面积达到600多平方米。这些也成了独具魅力的景点。豪华的装饰，新潮家电，自动车库，室外花木扶疏，绿草如茵，令国内外游人倾倒。

近年来，华西村还推出了“工业观光游”、“三农基地游”等系列旅游项目，推出了牛车水、人车水、垂钓等江南传统农事，让游客亲历，契合了国际参与式的旅游新时尚。华西村每天都吸引两三千人前来观光，其中包括很多海外游客，最多的一天达到1万多人次。2005年国庆黄金周，排队等待上金塔的游人，一等就是两个多小时。到华西村的游客除了观光，还有参观取经这一层目的，就是城里人，也想见识见识中国现代化的农村是什么模样。华西村根据游客的这种特殊的旅游需求，充分挖掘华西村宝贵的发展经验和“党史、村史、家史、个人成长史”，先后建起了建业窑、华西之路等载体，不断丰富旅游教育。村党委书记吴仁宝集中给游人做简短的报告，华西人自己组建的华西艺术团，编演了反映华西发展之路的文艺节目，让游客享受丰富的旅游文化。2006年来华西的游客达到104万人次。现在的华西村，有星级宾馆、园林山庄、世界公园这三大特色、三种层次的接待网络，能同时安排3500名游客食宿。

B

每年的“五一”和“十一”是两个旅游的黄金周。富裕起来的人们手头上有了钱，便也开始像电影、电视上的人们一样，过一把旅游的瘾。

他们外出旅游的形式多种多样：自助游、全包围、自驾游。搭飞机、坐火车、乘大巴、开私车，形式不一样，都是图个乐。

他们出游的路线也不一样，量着自个儿的收入来。那有钱的金领、白领、总裁、老板什么的已经游遍了神州大地或者不愿意和人们扎堆，便参加出国游。目的地直指四面八方：近的去新马泰、俄罗斯、韩国、日本、菲律宾；不远不近的去印度、埃及、土耳

其；更远的则到德国、法国、西班牙。这样的人随着中国人收入的增长是越来越多。争取中国游客成了各国旅游界的共识。据报道，中国游客在海外的人均购物花费已经超过日本，成了世界第一。这和中国超过日本成为外汇储备最多的国家的步伐是一致的。

一般的中国城市居民也年年来个国内游。他们一般报名参加组团旅行。旅行目的地一般是特大城市或者名胜古迹地等。像北京、西安、南京等大城市，既有几朝故都的遗迹，又有改革开放后迅速变化的气象，自然是人们选择的旅游目的地；而上海、香港、深圳、广州等城市则更多的是现代化大都市气氛，也是人们争相旅游的目的地；还有的人，主要是城市人，习惯了城市的喧嚣，则想利用长假，去领略宁静的田园风光，怡情于山水之间，瑞丽、西双版纳、黄果树、九寨沟、香格里拉成了他们的首选；一些收入不多的家庭也到附近的地方放松一下。农村的进进城，城里人下下乡，生活换位，就像偶尔下馆子换换口味一样。这也带动了城里和乡下的旅游业。尤其是城市近郊的农家乐旅游项目，使得农村真正靠山吃山，靠水吃水了。平常那些看惯了的山山水水变成了致富的摇钱树。这些年来，靠旅游致富的乡村是越来越多。

少数民族地区则以其独特的民族风情吸引旅游者。海南、云南、西藏、新疆、宁夏、内蒙等地区都有自己鲜明的特色。少数民族的民居、当地的特色水果蔬菜等成了款待旅游者的特色服务。旅游使一些边远地区的少数民族山寨依靠发展旅游业迅速脱贫致富，也使这些地区的居民不再靠砍伐山林、捕猎动物为生，从而保护了当地的生态。

IX Try to find some agriculture-related websites and know something about China's agriculture and its latest development.

Please refer to the following websites:

www.zgny.com.cn

www.agri.gov.cn

www.jgny.net

www.rcrc.org.cn

www.amic.agri.gov.cn

Unit Seven

Tours of Sites of Entertainment



Dialogues



Dialogue A



- A:** Entertainment is a word bearing several meanings. Its verb is entertain. Its first meaning is to receive. For example, he entertains his friends every Saturday evening with a dance party. Its second meaning is to amuse. For instance, they were entertained by his tricks. When entertainment is used as an uncountable noun, it means receiving or being received, but when it is used as a transitive noun, it means giving performance. So when we talk about tours of sites of entertainment, we mean the sites that receive visitors and give them pleasure or amusement.
- B:** Then we know how to discuss the topic.
- A:** Many places can entertain people. Museums, gymnasiums, stadiums, shopping malls, trade fairs, zoos, aquariums, tea houses . . .
- B:** Stop there. I wonder how a tea house can be a place of entertainment. When you are amused, you may laugh. Can you imagine a person drinking tea while laughing? He must be belching out. And by the way, in a tea house what makes him laugh?
- A:** You know Chinese people when receiving guests always offer a cup of tea. In a typical Chinese tea house, comic monologues or dialogues are performed by both professional comedians and amateurs. That is what amuses listeners.

- B:** By the way, will you explain “san xian” to me?
- A:** It is also a kind of folk art performed by a singer to the accompaniment of san xian, a kind of Chinese string musical instrument played by a musician by plucking the three strings stretched over a box covered with a piece of snakeskin, and a small drum played by the singer himself or herself, somewhat like the performance of a minstrel.
- B:** What do they usually sing about?
- A:** A legendary sketch, like the epic of Beowulf.
- B:** Will you talk about some other places of entertainment.
- A:** Are you interested in marine life?
- B:** Certainly. Even in my dreams, I fancy talking with seals, penguins, walruses . . .
- A:** They also take my fancy.
- B:** They are clumsy on land, but once in water, they are at home. They may leap off the water through hoops hung over the pool. They are smart animals.
- A:** By the way, shopping to me is also a kind of recommendable entertainment.
- B:** You can go to department stores or shopping malls. As a tourist, some cities, especially port cities have built themselves into free ports, where you can buy a lot of things duty free. Hong Kong is a case in point. If you want to go on a package tour, you spend much less than you travel yourself.
- A:** Then you are promoting your travel plans again.

Dialogue B



(**B** = bellboy, **G** = guest)

- B:** Any laundry today, sir?
- G:** Yes, it's all in the top right hand drawer of the writing table.
- B:** Let's see. That's two pairs of trousers, one lady's dress, one man's gabardine overcoat.
- G:** And this pair of slacks and pyjamas too. All have to be cleaned and pressed. When will they be ready?
- B:** Will next Monday do?
- G:** OK. But I'd like to have them sooner.

B: Then we have an extra charge for a special rapid service.

G: What if I want them tomorrow morning?

B: Then you have to pay ten dollars more.

G: Fine. How early do you open?

B: At seven. We can send them to your room.

G: That's very good service.

B: Here's is your slip, sir.

G: Thank you very much.

(Next morning)

B: Sir, your laundry is back. May I leave it on the bed?

G: Oh, yes. Thank you.

B: You'd better check it.

G: (He finds a button missing from one pair of his washed trousers.) Look at it. A button is missing.

B: I'm sorry, sir. I'll bring it back to the laundry. We'll try to find the button or we'll pay for the damage, sir.

G: OK.

Reading Material



Many Chinese cities are never short of places for entertainment like cinemas, theatres, bars and shopping centers. Undeniably, in recent years, under the impact of TV, cinemas and theatres are not as prosperous as before as most people prefer to stay at home in front of a TV screen rather than in a cinema or theatre sitting shoulder to shoulder with a stranger. To deal with the situation for their survival, cinemas and theatres have made various attempts, like partitioning the halls into several smaller ones so that they can show several films at the same time, which offer the audience more choices, or raising ticket price or going with the projectors to remote areas to show films where TV is still not accessible. Hard as they try, they still can't draw back their viewers. Theatres are likewise struggling for their survival. Operas, whether the national or local, are losing their glamour for audience as they are slow paced, unable to be in tune with the present rhythm of life. Some artistic forms like cross

talks are on the verge of extinction. While the people relying on these forms of folk art for a living are reducing, the buildings are standing still there awaiting new explorations tapped.

Luckily, some new generations of actors or performers have emerged in recent years. This has solved the problems that have troubled the leaders and audiences for years, for the former, the worries about the extinction of folk art, for the latter, the vexations for lack of new plays to enjoy. These new stars, or rather superstars, are figures such as Zhao Benshan and Guo Degang. Zhao is a native of the northeast of China and Guo, a native of Tianjin. Zhao was born in Tieling, a medium-sized city of Liaoning Province, a place famous for its black humor or a strong sense of humor among the local residents. People there enjoy a kind of musicals named Er-ren-zhuan, meaning a singing and dancing performance of two, a male and a female. The subject matter of the performance is largely drawn from people's daily life, their worries, happiness, marriages or funerals sung and danced out by the local gifted performers who are usually endowed with a good voice. Zhao was born into a family with this performing tradition. His uncle was a versatile blind performer and famous far and wide. In his childhood, Zhao became so fascinated with this kind of artistic performance that he imitated his uncle and learned how to sing humorous sketches and play many kinds of traditional Chinese musical instruments. 15 years ago, a rare chance led him to stardom. Jiang Kun, one of the most famous actors of cross talk went to Liaoning to select gifted performers. He discovered the genius in Zhao and introduced him to the director organizing the CCTV's Spring Festival Eve Gala. Zhao was given a chance, and his value was immediately recognized by the audiences across the country. Then in the years following, his performance became a must at the yearly gala. However, his appearance has sped up the decline of cross talk.

The other nova star is Guo. He was born in Tianjin, a place famous for producing many famous cross talk performers. As people have observed as they naturally pit cross talk against comic sketches, the decline of the former has witnessed the prosperity of comic sketches represented by Zhao and characterized by both speeches and dances. Yet, that is not like Guo to easily accept what others deem impossible. He made up his mind to reverse the downtrend of cross talk. He is not that kind of reckless or brainless reformers; he discreetly analyzed the cause of cross talk's decline, and found out that cross talk should be performed in theaters rather than on TV. This idea is contrary to what most people take as true. To most people, TV can make once-hit-wonders. Guo had enormous difficulty in his early days when he had no Beijing Hukou, an officially recognized residential registration status, and lived in a small apartment and performed in a small theatre in Tianqiao, a place for concentrated

entertainment performance and also the place that has helped many famous performers on their way to stardom. In those early days, he and his companions did not make money, but lost a lot. But his persistence and hard practice finally brought to him the long awaited recognition. Many say nowadays it is Guo who has saved cross talk as a performing art form.

It is people like Zhao and Guo who have saved cinemas and theatres in a time when TV has encroached on most kinds of performing art. Westerners often complain about the adverse influence of TV on their family life and on other kinds of entertainment. If they know the stories of Zhao and Guo, they must envy Chinese people their nova stars.



- 1 ***imagine somebody doing something***: have a mental picture of somebody doing something
I cannot imagine him doing well in the general election.
我无法想像他在大选中出彩。(我对他大选竞选不看好。)
- 2 ***by the way***: This is a very frequently used simple but very practical English sentence used for avoiding an embarrassing topic when you are chatting with others. Then you can say “By the way”, thus turning to something else. The expression may also be used to turn to another topic in a talk, where it is explained as “besides or I’d like to mention something else now”.
- 3 ***to the accompaniment of***: This phrase is often used in describing music performances when a singer sings with some musical instruments played to create a good effect.
He taught his pupils the “Odes” and other edifying songs, which they sang together to the accompaniment of lutes and harps. 他教学生们唱赞美歌和其他的有教育意义的歌曲,用笛子和竖琴伴奏。
- 4 ***be covered with***: be filled or decorated with on the surface of something
The large bathroom is covered with marvellous Valentino tiles.
大浴室铺的是漂亮的瓦伦提诺瓷砖。
- 5 ***fancy doing something***: think of doing something unrealistically
Do you fancy doing something on Friday night? 你周五晚上愿意做事吗?
- 6 ***be at home***: feel as comfortable and easy as if at home
“I like this neighbourhood and I am sure I will soon feel at home living here,” Tina

smiled. 蒂娜微笑着说：“我喜欢这种邻居关系，我肯定很快就会感到住在这里就像在家里一样。”

- 7 **be a case in point**: A case in point is a relevant example or pertinent case that is used to justify similar occurrences at a later time. It is a noun and its plural is cases in point. It derives from French à point meaning “something relevant”.

Emission of carbon dioxide which is the root of Global Warming, is a case in point.
作为全球变暖根本原因的二氧化碳排放就是一个好例子。

- 8 **be short of**: lack of

The worst summer drought in 30 years in northeast China's Liaoning province has left more than 1.2 million people short of drinking water. 东北辽宁省 30 年一遇的最大旱灾使得 120 万人严重缺水。

- 9 **shoulder to shoulder**: side by side; on the side of

If you stand shoulder to shoulder with a person or a group of people, you support them during a difficult time. 如果你和一个人或一伙人肩并肩，在困难时你要支持他们。
The chairman stood shoulder to shoulder with the managing director throughout the investigation. 在调查期间，总裁肩并肩站在总经理一边。

- 10 **hard as they try**: This is a sentence pattern meaning though they try very hard, they . . .
But pay attention to the following when a noun is used: “Boy as he is” is a correct expression, we do not say “a boy as he is”.

- 11 **likewise**: in the same way or manner

I told him to watch me and do likewise. 我叫他仔细看着我，并且照样做。

- 12 **be in tune with**: in accordance with; in compliance with

He promised to revitalize the country with a dynamic, efficient approach more in tune with the new global economy. 他承诺以更加符合新的全球经济发展的充满活力和效率的方式重振国家。

- 13 **on the verge of**: nearly; almost

Rare species such as the white-flag dolphin are thought to be on the verge of extinction and common species such as the carp are gasping for survival. 人们认为像白鳍豚那样的濒危物种正在消失的边缘，像鲤鱼那样的一般物种也在苟延残喘。

- 14 **for lack of**: because of not enough . . .

Northwest cancels flights for lack of pilots.
西北航空公司由于缺乏飞行员取消了许多航班。

- 15 **be endowed with**: to naturally have a particular feature, quality, etc.

They are endowed with reason and conscience and should act towards one another in a

spirit of brotherhood. (Article 1 of the Universal Declaration of Human Rights) 他们赋有良知和良心, 将本着兄弟情谊对待彼此。(《世界人权宣言》第一条)

16 *the genius in somebody*: the special ability found in somebody

Many of us who aspire to realise the genius in ourselves are more than prepared to perspire. 我们许多人祈望体现出我们身上的才能, 非常愿意为此出大力, 流大汗。

17 *That is (not) like somebody to do something*: That is (not) typical of somebody to do something. 某人就是(就不是)这样……

That is like him, to promise them something for a service and then forget all about it. 他就是那样, 承诺给他们服务, 然后就把自己的承诺抛到了脑后。

18 *encroach on*: lay one's hands on

Grizzlies encroach on polar bear's territory. 灰熊侵食北极熊的领地。

19 *envy somebody something*: feel uncomfortable with someone's fortune or success or advantages as to wish to have the same

Nature has endowed her with so much beauty that other ladies would envy her beauty secretly. 上天赋予了她如此的美貌, 使得其他女士只能暗地里羡慕。

• Exercises



- I** Try to read the following words and expressions taken from the text and fill the brackets with the corresponding phonetic symbols. You may look them up in your dictionary and pay attention to the relation between spellings and phonetic symbols.

gymnasium	[]	<i>n.</i>	a large room used for various indoor sports (as basketball or boxing) and usually equipped with gymnastic apparatus
stadium	[]	<i>n.</i>	a large usually unroofed building with tiers of seats for spectators at sports events
aquarium	[]	<i>n.</i>	an establishment where aquatic collections of living organisms are kept and exhibited
belch	[]	<i>v.</i>	to expel gas suddenly from the stomach through the mouth

monologue	[]	<i>n.</i>	a dramatic sketch performed by one actor
comic dialogue	[]	<i>n.</i>	a conversation between two comedians on the stage for a performance
comedian	[]	<i>n.</i>	an actor who plays comic roles
amateur	[]	<i>n.</i>	one who engages in a pursuit, study, science, or sport as a pastime rather than as a profession
minstrel	[]	<i>n.</i>	one of a class of medieval musical entertainers; especially a singer of verses to the accompaniment of a harp
epic	[]	<i>n.</i>	a long narrative poem in elevated style recounting the deeds of a legendary or historical hero
Beowulf	[]	<i>n.</i>	a legendary Geatish warrior and hero of the Old English poem Beowulf
life		<i>n.</i>	a group of things that are alive
gabardine	[]	<i>n.</i>	dress material of cotton or silk with wool lining (as used for raincoats) 华达呢
seal	[]	<i>n.</i>	any of numerous carnivorous marine mammals that live chiefly in cold regions and have limbs modified into webbed flippers adapted primarily to swimming
penguin	[]	<i>n.</i>	any of various erect short-legged flightless aquatic birds of the southern hemisphere
walrus	[]	<i>n.</i>	a large gregarious marine mammal related to the seal that is found in Arctic seas, has long ivory tusks, a tough wrinkled hide, and stiff whiskers, and feeds mostly on bivalve mollusks
a case in point			a good example
once-hit-wonder			one who becomes famous overnight
stardom	[]	<i>n.</i>	performers altogether or the status of a performer

II Give definitions to the mentioned words.

1. What is a gymnasium and what is it for?
2. What is the difference between a stadium and a gymnasium?
3. What is an aquarium and what do you usually see there?

4. When do you belch and when you belch what do you say to the people around you?
5. How do you define monologue?
6. How do you explain comic dialogue and can you tell us some famous actors of comic dialogues in China?
7. Are there differences between a professional comedian and an amateur comedian? If there are, tell us.
8. What is meant by minstrel?
9. What tricks can a seal play at an aquarium?
10. Give us a sentence in which a case in point is used.

III Discuss the following questions with your classmates.

1. Talk about the meanings of entertainment.
2. What animals in the zoo give visitors most entertainment?
3. What do visitors do in a tea house?
4. Try to tell the differences between green tea and black tea.
5. Try to tell why comic dialogues as a kind of performing art are going into decline in China.
6. What can we do to promote tours of places of entertainment?
7. If you are asked to talk about a studio, the place to produce films, a place of entertainment, describe how you will show tourists around one.
8. Describe an aquarium in as many details as possible.
9. What other places do you think can also be turned to for tours of entertainment?
10. How does pricing affect tours of entertainment?

IV Circle the letter before the best choice of the four alternatives.

1. Concert halls, cinemas or theaters often thwart their goers with _____.
A. good programs B. high prices C. poor programs D. both B and C
2. To promote tourism in an unexplored area of tourism, which of the following places should be targeted for the promotion campaign?
A. Large cities. B. Medium-sized cities. C. Small cities. D. Rural areas.
3. Some forms of folk art have strong appeal to public because they _____.
A. have chosen their subject matter from real life.
B. have priced their products properly.

- C. are caviar to the general.
D. none of the above.
4. To promote folk art, which of the following four options may be helpful?
A. Let performers go to the public, living with them and performing for them.
B. They should advertise their performances more on TV.
C. They should learn how to present themselves to the public.
D. They should have more discussions about their improvement.
5. You are more likely to find more entertainment in _____.
A. a small village B. a metropolitan city C. at home D. both A and B
6. In some international cities, gambling is legal. Which of the following cities is known for gambling business?
A. New York. B. Los Angeles. C. Chicago. D. Las Vegas.
7. In some Asian countries and regions, gambling is an important business. In which of the following cities, is it true?
A. Bangkok. B. Singapore. C. Tokyo. D. Macao.
8. Which of the following areas is known for folk art in Beijing?
A. Tianqiao. B. Houhai. C. Dashalan. D. Qianmen.
9. Which of the following places is known as a town of acrobatics in China?
A. Yangliuqing. B. Wuxi. C. Zhoushan. D. Wuqiao.
10. Which kind of the following folk arts is on the verge of extinction?
A. Paper-cutting. B. Puppet show. C. Beijing opera. D. Both A and B

V Match the words or expressions in the following columns.

A	B
full length novel	散文
novelte	中篇小说
short story	纪录片
poetry	恐怖片
prose	长篇小说
feature film	故事片
documentary film	短篇小说
horror film	诗歌
editorial board	大众媒体
printing paper	砚台

mass media	编辑部
anchorman	铜版纸
ink slab	主持人

VI Match the following phrases in their proper forms with the sentences below the square.

by the way	encroach on	envy somebody something
for lack of	that is (not) like somebody to do something	
on the verge of	to the accompaniment of	the genius in
be endowed with	be in tune with	be short of
shoulder to shoulder	likewise	a case in point
fancy doing	be/feel at home	

- The sincerity of the lady in entertaining us with all that she could offer soon made us _____.
- The tenor sang ten of his representative songs _____ a string band.
- Not only the giant panda or the white – flag dolphin is _____ extinction, but many others are also.
- A friend indeed should stand _____ with his friends.
- The master performed first, and his disciples did _____.
- Many say that he _____ genius, but he knows that his accomplishment is more from perspiration than inspiration.
- Epidemics can be prevented. SARS that broke out in 2003 is _____.
- She always _____ standing by her prince charming for a photo.
- She can not open her own business _____ funds.
- That _____ him to help others without giving any thought to himself.
- They _____ him his _____, who can help his son get a good job.
- We would never allow anybody _____ China's territory integrity and sovereignty.
- _____, will you tell me something about the Summer Palace?
- If he had not discovered _____ him fifteen years ago, he would still be a farmer today.
- Our economic development should _____ the international trend in environmental protection.

16. _____ money, he can hardly open his own business as scheduled.

- VII** Translate the following paragraph into Chinese and try to fill it with a view to knowing something about the practice in tourism.

HOTEL RESERVATION FORM

HICSS-35 January 7 – 10, 2010

Hilton Waikoloa Village (on the Big Island)

425 Waikoloa Beach Dr.

Waikoloa, Hawaii 96738

* * PLEASE RETURN THIS FORM DIRECTLY TO THE HOTEL * *

FAX: Reservations (808) 886-2902

Or call: (808) 886-1234 or 1-800-HILTONS

Or visit <http://www.hiltonwaikoloavillage.com/> (enter Group Code “HIC”)

Your conference registration will be verified prior to your arrival.

Name _____

Address _____

City _____ State _____ Zip _____

Country _____

Phone (Home) _____ / _____

(Office) _____ / _____

(Fax) _____

e-mail address _____

ARRIVAL	DEPARTURE
Date/Time/Airlines/Flight #	Date/Time/Airlines/Flight #
ACCOMMODATIONS # nights at hotel _____	
\$ 149/night	Garden/Golf/Mountain View _____
\$ 169/night	Partial Ocean View _____
\$ 199/night	Deluxe Ocean View _____

- All rates subject to HI state room tax (currently 11.41%).

* * HOTEL CANCELLATIONS: Cancellations up to 72 hours prior to arrival date will be refunded (1) night's deposit. Cancellations and No-Shows less than 72 hours before arrival date will be assessed night's deposit plus Hawaii State Tax charge. Payment for cancellation is made by retention of initial deposit made to hotel.

* * EARLY DEPARTURES: Should an individual check out earlier than the confirmed dates, there will be an Early Checkout Fee (currently \$50) assessed to the room account. Daily check-in time is 3:00 p. m. Check-out time is 12:00 noon.

* * TIPPING: At the guest's discretion, portorage is suggested at \$2.00/bag.

VIII Translate the following from Chinese into English and at the same time try to get familiar with some facts concerning cultural tourism.

A

长春电影制片厂的筹备实际上从1945年日本投降之后就开始了,当时起名叫东北电影公司,1946年10月1日命名为东北电影制片厂。1955年,改为现名。它是新中国第一家电影制片厂。首任厂长是袁牧之,当时的人员主要由延安、满洲映画株式会社和解放区的其他一些电影工作者组成。那时的设备和条件都很差,但似乎没有什么可以难住他们的。冒着枪林弹雨,他们摄制了大量的战争新闻片,如《民主东北》,这在今天都成了宝贵的史料。为拍这些影片,一些优秀的摄影师(如张绍柯、杨荫莹和王静安)牺牲了生命。特别值得一提的是,1949年5月这个厂完成了故事影片《桥》的拍摄,这是新中国电影的第一部故事片。新中国第一部木偶片、第一部动画片、第一部科教片、第一部短故事片、第一部长故事片和第一部译制片都在这里诞生。目前,长春电影制片厂已发展成为中国三大电影生产基地之一,下设总编室、导演室、拍摄室、美术室、音乐创作室、制片室、编刊室及美工、照明、录音、化装、服装、道具、剪辑、特技等车间,还有自己的电影乐团。它拥有8个摄影棚,5个录音室,一座现代化的洗印大楼,一个全国最大的道具库,全厂有职工2000多人,是一座可年产故事片30部,译制片20部,电视剧上千集,美术片几十本并可加工大批电影拷贝与音像制品的现代化综合性电影制片厂。建厂50多年来,长春电影制片厂共生产故事片600多部,尤以拍摄农村题材和战争题材的影片为长,作品充满了原汁原味的乡土气息和黑土地特有的粗犷豪放风格。近些年这个厂的一些作品有较重的商业化倾向,尽管这样,像《过年》这样的影片仍然为它赢得了荣誉。长春电影制片厂在译制外国影片方面是有极大贡献的。至今人们仍然铭记的《列宁在一九一八》、《夏伯阳》和《瑞典女皇》这样的优秀影片,都是由它介绍给中国观众的。该厂还拍摄了大量纪录片、科教片、美术片和电视片。长春电影制片厂不仅是一个电影生产地,而且是一个电影人员的培训地,造就了一

大批电影艺术家、事业家和技术专家。1960—1962 年之间，这个厂还成立过电影学院，可惜的是后来撤消了。

B

城市在发展旅游业方面有极大的优势。首先，它们已经在多年城市发展的过程中，建设了完备或者比较完备的基础设施，如：道路，包括普通城市街道、高速路等；商业网点，包括便利店、连锁店、超市、百货店等；水电气等；旅店、旅馆、饭店等。因此，城市有先发的优势。而在乡间，往往由于缺乏必要的配套设施，造成旅游者进不去出不来、住不下或者住不好等问题。而且，还没有其他的配套娱乐设施。因此，在改革开放初期，外国旅游者经常说，在中国旅游是：白天看庙，晚上睡觉。因此，旅游经济的价值链没有延伸，没有可以充分开发旅游衍生产品。在城市中，尤其是有悠久旅游文化传统的城市中，各种配套服务跟得上，就更具备从旅游业赚钱的潜力。

凡是城市都有自己的旅游特色产品。工业城市可以开发工业旅游项目，历史悠久的城市可以开发文化游，商业化城市可以开发购物游，濒海的城市可以搞海上游，临山的城市可以搞登山游。比如，大连、青岛、厦门、北海等城市都在做沿海城市发展旅游的文章，而像泰安这样的城市就在登泰山上发掘商机。这真应了那句古话：靠山吃山，靠水吃水。

IX Try to find the websites of the Summer Palace, the Forbidden City and Fragrant Hill Park and learn something about them.

Please refer to the following websites:

www.ctrip.com

www.aoyou.com

www.ly6688.com

www.cnta.com

www.ctceo.com

tour.sina.com.cn

Unit Eight

Tours of Famous Cities



Dialogues



Dialogue A



- A:** In spite of attractions of agritourism, cities, in my opinion, are still like magnets drawing more tourists. Can you tell me the reasons?
- B:** You are dialectic. People always like something different, which is probably the momentum that gives a great push to the development of tourism in two ways — the urban people rush to the countryside, while the rural people swarm to cities.
- A:** I think even foreign urban visitors also like visiting Chinese cities and foreign rural visitors like visiting Chinese farms. Whatever place they visit, they still visit some cities, staying more in cities than in villages, why?
- B:** No matter how much progress the rural areas have made in recent years, they still lack the variety of attractions and entertainment for visitors. In cities, big cities in particular, you can enjoy cultural events more easily, like concerts, art exhibitions, theatrical or operatic performances, ballet, to name only a few.
- A:** That's true. In cities, especially in metropolises like Beijing, Shanghai, Guangzhou or Hong Kong, you have more chances to run into sports stars, film stars, celebrities in entertainment field, whereas in rural areas, you are unlikely to have such chances.
- B:** On the other hand, cities offer more choices of restaurants, hotels, department stores, boutiques, museums, universities, a unique atmosphere of culture and history.

- A:** In terms of night life, it is still better to be in cities than in villages. In cities, shops close at later hours than in villages.
- B:** There is a general tendency that more countries are being urbanized. With the development of tourism, rural residents come to cities for trips, and they see what is good and can be transplanted to their life. When they go back, they will do the same. For example, they will change their lavatories, install flush equipment and begin to use coal gas or LPG. So to some extent, tourism brings new ideas to people. To see is to believe. Tourism is much more effective than propaganda.
- A:** Then what can urban people learn from their counterparts?
- B:** Also quite a lot. From their trips, they see with their own eyes what the present rural life is like. They begin to know more about the rural life, which is still not as comfortable as the urban life, so when they return to cities, they will become thriftier by saving every drop of water, every grain of rice. For school kids, a trip to a village is much better than ten hours of ideological lectures.
- A:** By the way, I hear cities have also explored their potential for developing tourism, promoting campus tours, family tours, etc.
- B:** That's true. Every summer vacation, many parents take their children to the campuses of famous universities. They want their children to realize the dreams they themselves did not realize when they were young. They pin their hopes on their children. Both parents and their children form a potential group of tourists. Universities, on the other hand, may also earn quite a lot by opening their teaching buildings, laboratories, libraries and sports facilities to these tourists. Some universities may open their students' dormitories to tourists. You know such dormitory rooms charge much less than luxury hotels. It is a win-win deal.
- A:** They are very much like youth hostels in western countries.

Dialogue B



(S = saleswoman, C = customer)

S: Good afternoon, sir. Can I help you?

C: Yes. My kid is interested in Chinese sports suits. Can you recommend me a fashionable

one?

S: Sure, sir. What size does he wear?

C: XL.

S: How do you like this one? That's his size.

C: I like the style but not the color.

S: How about this one?

C: It looks nice. How much is it?

S: 520 yuan RMB.

C: It is too expensive.

S: But it is a famous brand. "Li Ning", the prince of gymnastics. It is a kind of new generation product. It is one of the best sellers. Look at the needle-work.

C: Then, I'll take it. Please wrap it up as a gift.

S: Yes, sir. I'll wrap it up nicely. But what color of the package do you like?

C: Lightgreen.

S: Anything else do you want?

C: Not for the moment. What's the price?

S: 550 yuan RMB altogether, including the package.

C: (Pass the money.) Here it is.

S: Here is the receipt.

C: Thank you.

S: It's my pleasure.

Reading Material



Big cities have advantages in absorbing large numbers of tourists with their existing facilities without much need to expand for large investment in infrastructure, which was originally developed and constructed for the benefit of the local inhabitants.

Cities are different in categories. Some cities are industrial centers like Detroit and Huston; others are historical ones like Philadelphia and Edinburgh, while still many other cities are mixtures of history, culture, politics, industry and education like Beijing, Tokyo, New York. Mayors of cities tend to develop their cities in many respects, possibly in all

respects, so most cities become too ambitious; small cities want to grow into big ones and big cities want to grow into international metropolises. Monuments, museums, stadiums, gymnasiums, galleries, theatres and zoos, amusement parks are all in their development plans. As a result, these places become tourist attractions.

With millions of tourists visiting cities each year, cities invest a lot in building infrastructure, expressways, subways, light-railways, mass transportation systems, huge shopping malls, large sewage treatment plants, large power stations. In return, such constructions further spur the development of tourism, many tourists would be glad to revisit a city that takes a new look every a few years.

For crazy shoppers, cities provide them with more chances for shopping, even only for window-shopping. Many visitors enjoy bargaining with venders. Many cities like Hong Kong have taken shopping tours as their main attractions. Such cities have earned the name of shoppers' paradise. Tourists come not to go sightseeing, but merely for shopping.

Some cities rely on gambling to draw tourists. Cities like Las Vegas, Monte Carlo, Macao have developed into regional tourist cities by developing their gambling business. Their casinos hand in a handsome proportion of their income as business taxes to the local government and many local residents work as employees in casinos.

Some other cities have explored in other fields. For example, some are named the capital of flowers, or the capital of kites, or the capital of wine. They rely on these special features, holding international meetings or competitions to draw tourists. Many of tourists are participants to the meetings or sports events, and many are spectators or correspondents who come to cover the events. From this, you can see, tourism can be developed for affinity groups, that is, for



people of the same interests for the same purposes to the same tourist destinations. They come in groups, stay in groups and visit in groups. As the result of multiplier effect, other businesses also develop. Most noticeably, employment situation improves. More and more local residents are hired in tourism related businesses.

Undeniably, the unconventionally rapid development of tourism sometimes causes lack of hotel rooms or crowded tourist spots. The travel agencies and government tourism administrative organs in recent years have developed new products such as family tours and

alley tours, reducing the pressure on main scenic spots and adding new tourist spots. Some people think we should show what is our best to tourists, but they are mistaken there because tourists, especially foreign tourists are more interested in seeing what is alien to them, like the life of average Chinese people, what they have for their three meals, what kind of housing they have. They do not come to China to see high rises, copies of western buildings they are familiar with. So local residents may wear traditional Chinese gowns, play Chinese musical instruments, sing them some Chinese songs, or Chinese opera pieces, sell some souvenirs of local characteristics, make some local dishes to entertain them. Personal involvement is also a trend in tourism, you can invite tourists to join in your programs, singing, dancing, preparing food, etc.



1 ***in spite of***: not to be prevented by; notwithstanding

Although “in spite of” is perfectly standard English, some people prefer “despite” because it is shorter. Be careful not to mix the two together by saying “despite of” except as part of the phrase “in despite of” meaning “in defiance of”.

2 ***in one's opinion***: in the light of one's own idea

When you speak to him, be firm in your opinions. 你跟他说话的时候,要坚持己见。

3 ***give a push to sth.***: promote the development of something

A United Nations report says a large cash flow into China won't affect foreign direct investment in other Asian countries but will give a push to regional development as a whole. 一份联合国报告说大量现金流入中国不会影响在其他亚洲国家的外国直接投资,相反会推动该地区的整体发展。

4 ***to name only a few***: a phrase used to mean there are too many such cases, to save time, to give you only a few examples

Master as many survival skills as possible at university: a foreign language, computer literacy, driving, cooking, carpentry, to name only a few. 在大学中要掌握尽可能多的生存技能:一门外语,计算机技能,开车,烹饪,木工活,这里只提几项。

5 ***be transplanted to sth.***: have something grafted or implanted onto something else

One of the donated corneas was transplanted to a 18-year-old Chinese girl who suffered

from corneal blaze and the other will be transplanted to a Chinese young man soon.

其中一个捐献的角膜移植给了一个 18 岁的角膜灼伤的中国姑娘，另外一个角膜将移植给一个中国年轻男性。

6 to ... extent: to ... measure; to ... degree

Neither Party shall have any liability to the Company except to the extent of its agreed capital contributions. 任何一方仅以其出资额为限对合营公司承担责任。

7 with one's own eyes: seeing personally

It will give you a chance to see with your own eyes what is usually described with equations in a textbook. 这将给你一个机会，亲自看到课本中通常用公式描述的东西。

8 pin one's hope on: hope that somebody will realise one's own wish

In despair, they now pin their hope on fortune tellers.

绝望之中，他们把希望寄托在算命人身上。

9 win-win deal: a deal in which both the parties involved can win, none will lose

To the US NATO allies, the "100 Satellite Program" seems to be a "win-win" or even "multiple win-win" deal, whose fattest temptation being that every country can uplift its capability of space technology development. 对美国的北约盟国而言，“100 卫星项目”似乎是一个双赢乃至多赢项目，其最大的吸引力是各国都能提升其太空技术的发展。

10 in ... respects: viewed from any side

I saw an accord that is in all respects exactly what I am looking for. 我看到一个各方面都是我正在寻找的规定。

11 provide ... with ...: supply something for somebody

To do so, first and foremost, the universities should find out the interest of every student, and then provide them with adequate training so that they can fully develop their talents. 为了这样做，大学应该找出每个学生的兴趣，为他们提供适当的培训，以便他们能充分发展他们的才能。

12 enjoy doing: to get pleasure from doing sth. Pay attention to the verbs that require gerunds to follow, but not infinitives.

I also enjoy singing the National Day songs — they really sound inspiring and hopeful. 我也喜欢唱国庆节的歌曲，它们听起来振奋人心，让人充满希望。

13 hand in: give something required to the higher-up

It is recommended that every assignment handed in should be accompanied by a signed declaration such as the example below. 我们建议所有上交的作业应附有如下所示的签名声明。

14 *affinity group*: group of people of the same interest or profession

The Iraq Affinity Group organizes public visibility actions, teach-ins, forums, letter-writing and phoning efforts to raise awareness of the situation in Iraq.

伊拉克同行会组织了公开的公共活动，如演讲、研讨、写作、打电话等，以提高人们对伊拉克局势的了解。

15 *for ... purpose*: for the sake of

Ensure that your chosen tool can draw topologies, set up stimuli and create unique board stack-ups for single or couples tracks, for the purpose of carrying out analysis.

我们必须保证能够画拓扑图形，建立激励奖，创建一个或数个路径的独创的领导架构，以便进行分析。

16 *be alien to ...*: be strange to

This is a concept alien to many other cultures, especially to those without concept of individual, self, ego, etc. 这是一个相对许多其他文化独特的概念，特别是那些没有个人、自己、自我等概念的文化更是如此。

• **Exercises**



I Try to read the following words and expressions taken from the text and fill the brackets with the corresponding phonetic symbols. You may look them up in your dictionary and pay attention to the relation between spellings and phonetic symbols.

swarm	[]	v.	to move or assemble in a crowd
gown	[]	n.	a loose flowing outer garment formerly worn by men
alley	[]	n.	a narrow street; especially a thoroughfare through the middle of a block giving access to the rear of lots or buildings
mall	[]	n.	an urban shopping area featuring a variety of shops surrounding a usually open-air concourse reserved for pedestrian traffic
casino	[]	n.	a building or room used for social amusements; specifically one used for gambling

metropolis	[]	<i>n.</i>	the chief or capital city of a country, state, or region
gamble	[]	<i>v.</i>	to play a game for money or property
alien	[]	<i>a.</i>	belonging or relating to another person, place, or thing; strange
vender	[]	<i>n.</i>	one that vends; seller
infrastructure	[]	<i>n.</i>	the system of public works of a country, state, or region
souvenir	[]	<i>n.</i>	something that serves as a reminder

II Give definitions to the mentioned words.

1. How do you define swarm?
2. What is meant by gown?
3. What is an alley?
4. What is a shopping mall?
5. What is the difference between a shopping mall and a department store?
6. What is a casino for?
7. How do you define gamble?
8. What is a souvenir?
9. How do you explain infrastructure?
10. What is a metropolis?

II Discuss the following questions with your classmates.

1. What advantages do cities have in developing tourism?
2. Why do rural visitors like visiting cities?
3. How is urban infrastructure used for tourism?
4. Give examples of employment improvement in urban areas where tourism is developing.
5. Which kind of people belongs to affinity groups and can you give some examples?
6. Should cities try to develop in all respects?
7. How should small cities develop tourism?
8. Do local residents of big cities like the influx of tourists from other places? If so or not, please give your reasons.
9. If accommodation facilities are in short supply in your city, what can you do to

improve them?

10. What local special features are there in your city to attract tourists?

IV Circle the letter before the best choice of the four alternatives.

- Which of the following cities is known as a shoppers' paradise?
A. Hong Kong. B. Osaka. C. Macao. D. Guilin.
- Which of the following cities is known for its natural beauty?
A. Guilin. B. Osaka. C. Niigata. D. Luoyang.
- The stone formations of stalactite and stalagmite are likely to be found _____.
A. in caves B. in mountains C. on plains D. in the sea
- Hot springs are more likely to be found in _____.
A. volcanic areas B. loess plateaus C. tropic areas D. temperate areas
- Which of the following countries claims to own most islands?
A. The Philippines. B. The Netherlands. C. Japan. D. Indonesia.
- Which of the following countries has _____ islands?
A. 3,000 B. 3,103 C. 7,000 D. 7107
- Which of the following countries has made use of underground heat on a large scale for agricultural production?
A. Iceland. B. Norway. C. Sweden. D. Chad.
- Large cities develop tourism by taking advantages of its _____.
A. existing infrastructure B. shopping facilities
C. scenery D. geographical location
- Thousand-island Lake, a famous scenic spot is located in _____ Province.
A. Jilin B. Jiangsu C. Zhejiang D. Jiangxi
- _____ Province is famous for its flour-made food.
A. Yunnan B. Guangdong C. Hebei D. Shanxi

V Match the words or expressions in the following columns.

A	B
curator	角楼
pavilion on the water	鼓楼
watch-tower	博物馆馆长
drum-tower	水榭

bell-tower	钟楼
ceremonial arch	城壕
balustrade	佛龕
terrace	碑刻
niche for Buddha	栏杆
carved stone inscription	台阶
moat	牌楼
enclosure wall	古董
curios	围墙

VI Match the following phrases in their proper forms with the sentences below the square.

in spite of	be alien to	hand in	in . . . respect(s)
provide . . . with	with one's own eyes	in one's opinion	give a push to . . .
to . . . extent	pin one's hope on	to name only a few	be transplanted to

- _____ a severe drought, the province still got a good harvest.
- Many new ideas _____ those old people, who cling to some conventional ideas.
- His kidney _____ the girl who has suffered from uremia for two years.
- He has betrayed his pledge _____ a large _____.
- The government _____ the people in the flood stricken areas _____ medicine, grain, tents and what not.
- You will see _____ the progress they have made without any help from the outside.
- _____, who should be responsible for the accident?
- The reform _____ the local economic development.
- They _____ their son. They think he will realize their dream of receiving higher education.
- There are many zoonoses transmissible between animals and human beings, bird flue, hoof and mouth disease, _____.
- The village has made great progress _____ as you can see with your own eyes.

12. You should _____ your assignment on time next time.

- VII** The following is a genuine English menu and read it carefully and see how some Chinese names of vegetables or dishes are translated by some native speakers. Then translate the following menus into Chinese with a view to knowing something about dishes in both Chinese and English.

Dining & Bars | Our Menu | Cotswold House Menus

Our Menu

Bar menu is served 12 – 2.30 pm and 6 – 9.45 pm.

Restaurant menu is available in the bar and restaurant from 7 – 9.45 pm.

A sample of our restaurant and bar menu:

RESTAURANT MENU

Starters

Salad of Cerney goat's cheese

dried tomatoes and tarragon, honey, walnut and English mustard £ 5.25

Pâté of locally smoked trout

English garden salad and toasted rye bread £ 5.25

Terrine of chicken and wood pigeon

studded with apricots and Sherry vinegar dressing £ 6.25

Summer vegetable broth with parsley pesto £ 4.50

Noel Arms cured salmon £ 5.50

new potato and shallot salad, grain mustard dressing

Warm smoked duck breast

salad of garden peas and broad beans, shallot and mint dressing £ 5.75

Vegetarian Spring rolls (*oriental*)

served with a sweet chilli dipping sauce £ 6.50

Chicken satay (*oriental*)

marinated in ginger, garlic, honey, turmeric and cumin, served with peanut sauce £ 6.95

Wonton soup (*oriental*)

pork and prawn dumplings in chicken stock £ 5.00

Mains

Breast of Cotswold free-range chicken

local cider scented jus, potato cake and medley of local beans and peas £ 13.50

Roast chump of English lamb

garlic mash, roasted shallot and Madeira jus £ 14.25

Pan seared fillet of Cotswold beef

carrot and celeriac puree baby spinach and fried potato, Port wine sauce £ 16.75

Moreton in Marsh pork cutlet

sautéed potatoes and caramelized baby onions, Hooky and grain mustard cream sauce £ 13.25

Whole grilled Bibury trout

herbed potatoes, watercress and mushroom cream sauce £ 13.00

Poached fillet of grey mullet

slow cooked fennel and artichokes, hollandaise sauce £ 14.75

Locally grown courgette, tomato and potato bake

vine tomato relish £ 10.25

Sri Lankan black lamb curry (*oriental*)

slow stewed tender lamb cooked in a black pepper sauce turmeric and raisin rice £ 14.50

Thai green curry (*oriental*)

monkfish and king prawns curry served with steamed rice £ 15.50

Chicken Kong Pao (*oriental*)

spicy chicken, mixed pepper corns, spring onion, pea nuts served with egg fried rice £ 12.50

All non-oriental main courses are served with lightly cooked seasonal vegetables.

Puddings

Iced citrus parfait

almond biscuits £ 5.50

Cinnamon poached pear

chocolate and rum mousse, crisp pastry leaves £ 5.50

Traditional summer pudding

clotted cream £ 5.50

Prune and whisky tart

sour cream sorbet £ 5.50

Warm apple and blackberry crumble

vanilla ice cream £ 5.50

Selection of fine local cheese

grapes, celery and biscuits £ 6.50

Dessert Wines

Glass 50 ml

Muscat de Beaumes de Venise, Domaine de Fenouillet, France, 2004 £ 3.00

Elysium, California Black Muscat, 2004 £ 3.50

Sauternes, Cordier, Bordeaux, France £ 3.50

Orange Muscat & Flora, Brown Brothers, Australia, 2004 £ 3.50

Port

Glass 50 ml

Cockburn's, Fine Ruby £ 3.00

Cockburn's, Late Bottle Vintage, 1998 £ 5.00

Dow's aged 10 year Tawny £ 6.00

Cafetière of freshly ground coffee/100% Colombia £ 2.50

Espresso, cappuccino, café late/Lavazza £ 2.50

Selection of traditional, herbal and flavoured tea £ 1.95

Liquor coffee £ 5.00

BAR MENU

Starters

Homemade soup of the day

served with local country style bread £ 4.25

Salad of Cerney goat's cheese

dried tomatoes and tarragon English mustard and walnut dressing £ 5.00

Home made ham hock terrine

served with pickled cauliflower and carrot £ 5.50

Noel Arms cured salmon

potato, caper and shallot salad, grain mustard dressing £ 5.50

Platter of oriental and Asian nibbles

(Spring rolls, Thai fish cake, honey spare ribs, chicken satay) £ 6.75

Slow cooked crispy leg of duck

with oriental spices marinated salad of bok choy and hoi sin dressing £ 6.50

Mains

Grilled spring chicken with lemon and thyme

buttered new potatoes and watercress £ 13.50

Home made lamb burger

salad and chips, minted mayonnaise and BBQ dip £ 10.25

Beer battered cod and chips

with fresh garden peas £ 11.50

Grilled whole Bibury trout

herbed new potatoes, watercress and mushroom sauce £ 13.00

Freshly baked quiche

of the day served with garden salad £ 7.75

Lunch Sandwich Menu

Served on a choice of white or whole meal bread:

Classic club sandwich

served with chips and relish (chicken, egg, bacon tomato, lettuce and mayonnaise) £ 7.50

Cotswold beef Bookmaker sandwich

with English mustard or horseradish, chips and watercress salad £ 8.50

Traditional Sandwich Menu

Served with salad and homemade vegetable crisps on a choice of white or whole meal bread:

Double Gloucester cheese and tomato £ 4.25

Moreton in Marsh honey roast ham and mustard £ 4.75

Poached Bibury trout with lemon and herb mayonnaise £ 5.50

Oak smoked salmon with dill pickled cucumber £ 5.75

Soup and Sandwich Meal

Any of the traditional sandwiches with soup of the day, add £ 2.75

Double Gloucester rarebit

with mixed leaf salad and local cider dressing £ 5.50

Traditional Gloucestershire ploughman's lunch

Double Gloucester cheese, locally smoked trout, Moreton in Marsh hand raised pork pie

and honey roast ham £ 11.75

VIII Translate the following from Chinese into English and at the same time try to get familiar with some facts concerning tourism.

A

韩国首都首尔坐落在离黄海60公里远的汉江上，位于韩国的西北部。除了很短的一段时间（1399—1405）外，首尔从1394年到1948年国家分裂为止一直是国家的首都。在韩语中，首尔就是首都的意思。无论在李朝（1392—1910），还是在日本统治时期（1910—1945），虽然官方称之为汉城或永城，但人们都把它叫做首尔。在14世纪大部分时间里，官方也称它为汉阳。

今天，首尔面积为605平方公里，是1948年时面积的两倍多。朝鲜战争后，首尔发展迅速。这里气候四季鲜明，最冷的月份是一月，平均气温是 -3°C ，夏季最热的月份是八月，平均气温为 25°C ，全年降雨量为1300毫米，降雨主要在夏季。由于城市位于盆地，以及车辆的增加，空气污染问题日趋严重。汉江的污染问题也很严重。但是从上个世纪80年代开始，由于建造了大型的污水净化设施，水的污染情况有了改善。

首尔街道布局严整，成矩形规划，由环型线联系在一起。自从1950年以来，首尔人口不断增长，成为了世界上人口最稠密的城市之一。首尔的城市人口构成比较单一，外国居民非常少。制造业、商业和服务业是该市主要的就业行业。纺织业、机械制造业和化学工业是制造业的主要构成部门，食品饮料业、印刷出版业也比较重要。首尔两个最主要的传统商业区是东大门市场和南大门市场，分别位于首尔城池的东门和南门附近。这里商店林立，不仅服务首都，而且服务全国。另外，大型的居民楼下也有各类商店。

首都也是全国的金融中心，主要的股票交易所和银行都位于首都，每年有许多贸易展览在首都举行。首尔的交通也比较发达，但是还是赶不上人口的增加。一个巨大的地铁系统已经取代了老式的电车系统，减轻了交通的压力，和公共汽车、轻轨铁路一起成为主要的大众交通系统。首都成了铁路枢纽，和全国包括仁川、釜山在内的绝大多数城市和港口连接。位于首尔西部的金浦国际机场是韩国的航空枢纽。

B

韩国普及了六年制义务教育，大部分小学毕业生也接受中学义务教育。由于人口增长迅速，小学教学设施显得紧张。韩国绝大多数大学和研究机构都位于首尔。

首尔也是全国的文化中心。这里有国家艺术院和科学院，几乎全国所有的学术团体

和图书馆都在这里。国立古典音乐研究所致力于保存韩国传统宫廷音乐和培养音乐家，同时也有两个附属于它的西洋交响乐队。除此之外，这里有国家剧院、歌剧院和一些公立和私立的博物馆。首尔四面环山，市内大大小小的公园使居民们可以用不着走多远就能到达这些公园。城市里还有很多体育设施，如首尔体育中心。那里曾举行过1986年的亚运会和1988年的奥运会。

IX Try to find the websites of such metropolitan cities as Tokyo and New York, and get to know something about them.

Please refer to the following websites:

www.nytimes.com

www.nyconsulate.prchina.org

www.todaystokyo.com

Unit Nine

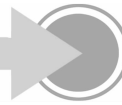
Tours of Shopping Places



Dialogues



Dialogue A



- A:** You know I am crazy about shopping. When I am in a tourist group, what I want to see most are commodities of various kinds. I want to compare prices of goods at tourist destinations with those of my home city, and then I will bargain with salesgirls.
- B:** You are like my wife. As a tour guide, if there are more women in my group, I will leave enough time for them to do shopping.
- A:** But I hear you get commission from stores for each stay of tourist groups led by you. Is it true?
- B:** To some extent. If you enter into a tourist group, and the travel agency charges you much less than the commonly accepted market price, then the boss of the agency hopes that the commission from stores can make up the difference as he pays his tour guides less. I think it is understandable.
- A:** What stores is a tour guide likely to show his tourists around?
- B:** Jewelry stores or handicrafts stores.
- A:** What's the reason that he shows his tourists around such stores?
- B:** It is easy to understand that because things sold there are high in price and light and easy for carrying around, like bracelets, brooches, ear rings, cloisonné articles. On the other hand, tourists are not experts, and they can not tell the fake from the real. When they are in a

hurry touring from place to place, they have no time to bargain. When they find themselves cheated, they are already in another place, too far away to go back for the refund.

- A:** Yes, I have heard quite a lot of such stories. So we'd better be more careful and watch out for traps.
- B:** Some vendors on streets are always cheating customers. They sell gilt necklaces for real ones to customers and cheap stone ones for real jade ones. They move frequently and have no fixed places for business. Once you're cheated, you are cheated for good.
- A:** I heard some vendors even sell cultural relics, such as unearthed copper statues. They look rusted with mould spots here and there on the bodies of statues, looking like having been in the earth for hundreds of years.
- B:** For two things, you should be watchful. First of all, cultural relics are not allowed to be in trade. Secondly, how can there be so many unearthed relics? It is impossible.
- A:** I agree with you.

Dialogue B



(W = waiter, G = guests)

- W:** What would you like to order, sir?
- G:** As we are in China now, we would like to experience some Chinese dishes. Can you recommend some typical Chinese dishes to us?
- W:** Certainly, it's my pleasure.
- G:** What shall we start with?
- W:** A Chinese dinner usually starts with an assorted cold dish. It can be mixed poultry, vegetables or seafood.
- G:** And then what follows?
- W:** A chicken dish, a prawn, a roast duck, then a clear soup, followed by a fish.
- G:** I hear that fish is the last main dish, is that right?
- W:** Yes. When you see fish, you see all the main dishes have been served and the dinner will wind up with rice.
- G:** What if we would like to have Chinese noodles?
- W:** Certainly you can. But rice usually goes with fish, not noodles.

G: What noodles can you tell us about?

W: Pulled Lanzhou noodles and peeled Shanxi noodles are the most famous.

G: But is that all?

W: Not yet. We usually serve some fresh fruits that are in season in the end.

G: That's great.

Reading Material

The well-known Culture Street of the Colored Glaze Plant in Beijing is located out of Hepingmen Gate, extending 800 meters west to South and North Willow Lanes and east to Yanshou Temple Street, totally in Xuanwu District. The history of this street traces back to the Liao Dynasty. It was then a suburban area, thus called Haiwang Village, meaning Neptune Village. Later in the Yuan Dynasty, an official kiln was built here for producing glazed tiles. Since the Ming Dynasty when the construction of the inner city of Beijing started, the scale of the kiln started to expand for building more palaces. The colored glaze plant thus became one of the five official plants attached to the industrial ministry of the national government then.

When the outer city was built in the year 32 of Emperor Jiajing of the Ming Dynasty, the location of the plant became part of the urban area. As the work of a kiln was unsuitable for the city, the plant moved to Liuliqu Village, meaning village of a colored glazed ditch, in the present-day Mentougou District. However, the original site of the plant has retained its old name up to now. In the days of Emperor Shunzhi of the Qing Dynasty, the people of the Manchu nationality and the people of the Han nationality lived in separation.



As the Colored Glaze Plant happened to be located in the west of the outer city, most of the Han officials then lived nearby; later on,

various provincial hostels were also built nearby, so officials and candidates for imperial examinations often assembled here for visiting bookstores, thus attracting the bookstores that used to be prosperous in the Ming Dynasty at Qianmen Gate, Dengshikou Street and West District all to Colored Glaze Street. At the same time, book dealers from all over the country also came here to open stores to sell books, thus making the street an elegant and scholarly place in the capital and the biggest book market characteristic of a humanistic atmosphere for its consecutive development of culturally related businesses of brushes, ink, paper, ink-slabs, curios, calligraphic works and paintings.

In the early years of the Qing Dynasty, a teachers' school was built on the original site of the Colored Glaze Plant, and the school was the later middle school of Beijing Normal University, while south of the site of the plant was constructed into the park of Haiwang Village, which turned into the center of the market place of the plant, one of the busiest places of Changdian area later on.

In 1927, Hepingmen Gate was built and Xinhua Street was repaired, thus the Culture Street of the Colored Glaze Plant being divided into the East Colored Glaze Plant and the West Colored Glaze Plant.

There are many famous bookstores on the street like Huaiyin Shanzhuang meaning the mountain house in the shade of Chinese scholar trees, Guyizhai meaning the room of ancient arts, Ruichengge meaning the pavilion of luck, Cuiwenge meaning the pavilion of book collections, Yidege meaning the pavilion of an occasional acquisition, Li Fushou Stationery Shop, as well as China Bookstore, the oldest bookstore in China, and the three original bookstores on the side of the West Colored Glaze Plant: the Commercial Press, the Chung Hwa Book Co., and the World Book Co. But the most well-known old shop is Rongbaozhai meaning the pavilion of glorious treasure. It is said that the Colored Glaze Plant is known for its famous cultural stores like Rongbaozhai. There is much in it. The store originated from Songzhuzhai meaning the pavilion of pines and bamboos. It changed to its present name because of a story, which goes like that in the years of Emperor Guangxu the store changed to the name of Rongbaozhai after a motto saying making friends through correspondence in writing and earning one's glorious name as one's treasure. Lu Runxiang, a famous calligrapher wrote the three Chinese characters of Rongbaozhai. In the late years of the Qing Dynasty, many scholars often gathered here. In the early years of the Republic of China, Yu Youren, Zhang Daqian, Wu Changshuo, Qi Baishi, famous painters or calligraphers of the old generation, also frequented the store. You may have seen the film of The Grand Ceremony of the Proclamation of the Founding of the PRC or the photo of the ceremony, in

which there was the renowned elderly man with long beard, Shen Junru, whose paper fixing rule was bought from Rongbaozhai.

In the late days of the Qing Dynasty and the early days of the Republic of China, many old stores like Rongbaozhai and Daqian Gallery often hung paintings or calligraphic works of great masters in their showcases, which drew many pedestrians to stop to have a look on their way. This formed a special scene of the street. Of all the stores here, Rongbaozhai showed more famous paintings than the other stores. What is the most famous for the store are the artworks of xylography and water printing. The store incorporated the techniques of block cutting, printing and paper folding and cutting into the techniques of xylography and water printing, thus perfecting the art of water printing. Mr. Lu Xun praised their works.

After liberation, under the care of the Party and government, some traditional techniques and technology of Rongbaozhai were brought to full play. The printed replicas of Rongbaozhai have reached the degree enough to get mixed up with the genuine and make the onlookers hard to tell from the genuine. Its duplicated copies of Wenyuantu, a painting of an ancient school and Qingmingshanghetu, a painting expressing the prosperity of an ancient Chinese fair at the time of Qingming Festival, have been on display many times in different countries and won admiration from countless amazed masters of art and high international prestige. When the famous painter of traditional Chinese painting, Qi Baishi was alive, he could tell the duplicated ones from his genuine ones.

Since the reform and opening up to the outside of the world, with the support of Beijing Municipal Government and Xuanwu District Government, this famous ancient culture street has been renovated and repaired several times, and has gained a new lease of life, thus with its collections of books, calligraphic works and paintings, curios and stationeries from all over the world having become a tour must for both domestic and foreign tourists who are interested in Chinese culture.



1 **be crazy about**: be mad about; be extremely enthusiastic about

The majority of those people who are crazy about Japanese-Korean stuff are teenagers.

对日韩东西痴迷的大多数人是十来岁的年轻人。

- 2 **bargain with**: keep talking with somebody for a reduction of the payment
You can bargain with the vendors for further reductions and get a reasonable price — sometimes even beyond your expectations. 你可以和小贩进一步讨价还价，得到一个你料想不到的合理价位。
- 3 **enter and enter into**
enter: to go or come into
enter into: become a part of
She motioned me to enter. 她以手势示意我进去。
This means foreign investors may have controlling shares, that more and more “foreign-invested” hospitals with larger investment will enter into China’s medical service market. 这意味着外国投资者可能控股，即越来越多的拥有大量外国投资的医院将成为中国医疗服务市场的一部分。
- 4 **make up the difference**: compensate for what is not enough
When the man (apparently of mid-Eastern descent) in front of her doesn’t have enough money she offers him a dollar to make up the difference. 当她前面的那个明显是中东后裔的男子没有足够的钱时，她给了他一元补足差额。
- 5 **carry around**: hold something and move around
This could make the transcripts far more convenient to carry around.
这使得成绩单更方便地拿着四处显摆。
- 6 **in a hurry**: anxious to act quickly
The man was in a hurry and whipped his horse. 此人十分匆忙，挥鞭答马。
- 7 **refund**: to give the money paid back to the customer
Subject to the provision of these rules, if a ticket on which reservation of a seat or berth has been made, is presented for cancellation, refund of fare shall be made after deducting cancellation charge from the fare as follows. 根据这些规定的条款，如果出示已订购的坐票或卧铺票，要求取消订票，根据以下规定在票费扣除退票手续费后，可以退款。
- 8 **watch out for**: be on guard against; be vigilant against
Watch out for weather and tides, listen to the weather forecast before setting off and enquire on the tide schedule and wind conditions. 观察天气和海浪，出发前听天气预报，询问海浪情况和风力。
- 9 **for good**: for ever
He is expelled from the organization once and for good. 他被永久性开除出了组织。
- 10 **in trade**: in the process of buying, selling, or exchanging goods

In the year of 2003, the most frequent disputes that took place in trade are issues of intellectual properties. 2003 年发生频率最高的贸易争执是知识产权问题。

11 *be located*: be situated

The school is located on Yangfang Road, about 150 meters south of the crossroads of Yangfang Road and Rudong Street. 学校位于羊坊路, 离羊坊路和如东街交叉口南约 150 米。

12 *trace back to*: find the origin by going back to

The use of this kind of device can be traced back to the Yuan Dynasty.
这种器具的使用可追溯到元代。

13 *attached to*: affiliated to

The suppression of signals of protons attached to carbon-12 can be achieved in only one scan irrespective of pulse phase cycles. 只要一次扫描, 不管脉冲相位周率如何, 都可以抑制附着于碳-12 的质子信号。

14 *up to now*: so far; until now

Up to now the university has produced over 1,000 masters and doctorates.
到目前为止, 该大学已经毕业 1 000 余位硕士和博士。

15 *retain and remain*

retain: (transitively) used to mean keeping something especially as a result of a process
I will manage to retain the most important thing that a person involved in politics must cherish. 我将努力做到保留涉足政治的人必须最珍视的东西。

remain: (intransitively) used to mean what is left over as a result of a process

Although the housing sector continues to be weak, and may remain a drag on GDP for the next several quarters, fundamentals provide a firm foundation for solid performance by the other sectors of the economy through the rest of the year. 虽然房地产业持续疲软, 可能在今后几周中继续拖 GDP (国内生产总值) 的后腿, 但是基本经济指数为全年剩余时间内其他行业的扎实表现提供了一个坚实的基础。

16 *characteristic of*: typical of; being the characteristic of

We observed many pathological changes in this animal model, which were characteristic of Alzheimer's disease in human. 我们观察到在这个动物类型中的病理变化, 这些变化是老年痴呆症的特点。

17 *There is much in it*: Much can be said about it.

There is much in our life which we do not control and we are not even responsible for.
我们生活中有许多东西, 我们控制不了, 甚至无法对之负责。

18 *which goes like that*: This is an often used expression preceding a saying one heard or

read somewhere.

There is a beautiful legend which goes like that, long long ago in the Zhou Dynasty, there were five celestials riding five rams with rice grains in their mouths... 有个美丽的传说是这样的，在很久很久以前的周朝，五个仙人乘坐口衔谷穗的五只山羊……

19 *incorporate ... into*: to make become united in one organization

This small factory after running five months in debt was finally incorporated into a big company to become one of its subsidiaries. 该小工厂在连续五个月亏损经营后，并入一家大公司，成了其一个子公司。

20 *bring ... to full play*: make full use of something

His speech has given a great push to the scientists and technicians in the company, thus bringing their talents to full play. 他的讲话给了该公司科技人员极大的鼓舞，充分调动了他们的聪明才智。

21 *mix ... up with*: put different substances or people together

He can hardly mix himself up with the local farmers, for he is still dressed up and speaks in a different way as to make himself easily singled out by the locals. 他很难和当地农民打成一片，打扮和说话都不一样，极易被当地人区别开来。

22 *tell ... from*: distinguish ... from

He can not tell right from wrong as he is such an easy-going person always influenced by his companions. 他容易和人打交道，受同伴影响，不辨是非。

23 *on display*: showed or exhibited

Many new Chinese products will be on display at the 2010 World Expo in Shanghai. 在2010年上海世博会上，将有许多中国新产品展出。

24 *gain a new lease of life*: get a better chance of living

Trees and grass in the rain that came after three months of drought gained a new lease of life. 经历三个月的干旱之后，草木再逢甘霖，焕发新生。

• Exercises



- I** Try to read the following words and expressions taken from the text and fill the brackets with the corresponding phonetic symbols. You may look them up in your dictionary and pay attention to the relation between spellings and phonetic symbols.

bracelet	[]	<i>n.</i>	an ornamental band or chain worn around the wrist
brooch	[]	<i>n.</i>	an ornament that is held by a pin or clasp and is worn at or near the neck
ear ring	[]	<i>n.</i>	an ornament for the ear and especially the earlobe
cloisonné	[]	<i>a.</i>	of, relating to, or being a style of enamel decoration in which the enamel is applied and fired in raised cells (as of soldered wires) on a usually metal background
relic	[]	<i>n.</i>	a survivor or remnant left after decay, disintegration, or disappearance
glaze	[]	<i>n.</i>	a smooth glossy or lustrous surface or finish
calligraphy	[]	<i>n.</i>	artistic, stylized, or elegant handwriting or lettering
curio	[]	<i>n.</i>	something considered novel, rare, or bizarre
inkslab	[]	<i>n.</i>	a thick plate or slice of stone for holding ink
replica	[]	<i>n.</i>	an exact reproduction
xylography	[]	<i>n.</i>	the art of engraving on wood, or of making prints from such engravings

II Give definitions to the mentioned words.

1. What is meant by bracelet and where do people wear a bracelet?
2. What is a brooch?
3. Define an ear ring in as many details as possible.
4. What is meant by cloisonné?
5. How do you define relic?
6. What are glazed tiles used for?
7. What is meant by calligraphy?
8. What is a curio?
9. When is an inkslab used?
10. What differences are there between genuine artistic works and fake ones?

III Discuss the following questions with your classmates.

1. What people are more likely to go shopping?
2. How can you tap the potential of purchasing power of tourists?
3. In what ways can we say shopping tours are part of the multiplier effect of tourism?

4. Why do bosses of travel agencies hope that their tourists go shopping?
5. What do you think of the commission offered by stores to tour guides?
6. Should tour guides accept the commission offered by stores? If yes or no, please give your reasons.
7. In what seasons are there buying sprees and in what ways can these sprees be incorporated into tours?
8. Why do many tourists enjoy visiting ancient streets or cities?
9. How can you as a tour guide arouse your tourists' interest in Chinese history or culture?
10. How do you prepare for guiding a cultural tour?

IV Circle the letter before the best choice of the four alternatives.

1. _____ are famous local specialties of Tianjin.
 - A. Steamed meat-filling dumplings, deep-fried twisted dough-sticks and sweet flat round dumplings
 - B. Spring Festival paintings, clay figures and ink-slabs
 - C. Western style suits, flying-pigeon brand bikes and Xiali brand cars
 - D. Roast duck, salted duck and barbecued pork
2. Northeast China is famous for _____.
 - A. ginseng, mink pelts and Carex meyeriana
 - B. Tigers, black bears and roes
 - C. forests, rivers and black soil
 - D. heavy industry, light industry and agriculture
3. Baotou is an industrial base, well known for its _____ deposit.
 - A. rare earth
 - B. uranium
 - C. selenium
 - D. iron
4. Both Yungang and Longmen Grottoes were built in the _____ Dynasty.
 - A. Northern Wei
 - B. Song
 - C. Tang
 - D. Qing
5. Which of the following provinces has the biggest population in China?
 - A. Shandong.
 - B. Henan.
 - C. Sichuan.
 - D. Jiangsu.
6. Which of the following provinces has had the biggest annual GDP in recent years in China?
 - A. Shandong.
 - B. Henan.
 - C. Sichuan.
 - D. Guangdong.
7. Which of the following provinces has more ethnic nationalities than any other province, autonomous regions or municipality directly under the administration of

- the central government in China?
- A. Guangxi Zhuang Autonomous Region. B. Inner Mongolia Autonomous Region.
C. Yunnan. D. Qinghai.
8. Which of the following provinces has more islands than any other province, autonomous regions or municipality directly under the administration of the central government in China?
- A. Zhejiang. B. Taiwan. C. Hainan. D. Jiangsu.
9. Which of the following provinces or autonomous regions has more lakes than any other province, autonomous regions or municipality directly under the administration of the central government in China?
- A. Tibet. B. Qinghai. C. Hubei. D. Hunan.
10. Which of the following provinces or autonomous regions produces more coal than any other province, autonomous regions or municipality directly under the administration of the central government in China?
- A. Inner Mongolia. B. Shanxi. C. Heilongjiang. D. Liaoning.

V Match the words or expressions in the following columns.

A	B
courgette	咖喱粉
curry	小胡瓜
iced citrus parfait	柑橘果冻
prune and whisky tart	滴酒不沾者
ginseng	酸梅威士忌蛋糕
longan	木耳
fungus	龙眼
squab	素食的
wolfberry	西方雪果
anti-carcinogenic	乳鸽
cordyceps	冬虫夏草
vegetarian	人参
teetotaler	抗癌的

VI Match the following phrases in their proper forms with the sentences below the square.

be crazy about	bargain with	make up the difference	watch out for
for good	trace back to	attached to	up to now
characteristic of	incorporate ... into	bring ... to full play	mix ... up with
tell ... from	on display	gain a new lease of life	

- The boy, young as he is, _____ becoming an astronaut when he grows up.
- His wife is better than he in _____ vendors for further price reductions.
- Released from prison, he decided to turn over a new leaf and _____.
- The batik products from Guizhou that _____ at the Expo appealed to visitors, especially from abroad.
- The batik _____ the minority nationalities in Guizhou usually takes flowers and birds for its patterns.
- Could you _____ the Zhuang nationality _____ the Dai nationality?
- When you _____ a chemical improperly in a wrong order _____ some other chemicals, an explosion is likely to occur.
- When a teacher excels in teaching what is difficult in a simply understood way, he is likely to _____ his students' interest and zest _____.
- The hospital _____ Peking University is one of the best known hospitals in the country.
- _____ he has performed successfully 203 operations.
- You have to _____ lurking dangers when you trudge through a forest.
- The poor boy was drummed out of the school _____ because he had fought with many of his schoolmates.
- The discovery of the continent of America can _____ the 15th century.
- The boss of the travel agency does not give high wages to his tour guides as he hopes that the tourists _____.
- He _____ the effective methods he learnt from other companies _____ his management, so the efficiency of his company has improved a lot.

VII Read the following menu with a view to knowing something about the names of Chinese and Western dishes.

Cold Appetizers 凉菜

Marinated Jelly Fish with Spring Onion 洋葱拌海蜇

¥ 32.00

Sliced Beef in Bean Paste 酱汁牛肉片	¥28.00
Smoke Mocked Goose in Shanghai Style 上海熏素鹅	¥28.00
Fillet Pig's Knuckle with Garlic & Cucumber 猪蹄黄瓜拍蒜泥	¥28.00
Sour & Sweet Dried Beancurd in Ning-Bo Style 宁波糖醋烤豆腐	¥28.00

Home-Made Soup/Potage 私房清/浓汤

Vegetable & Chop Suey Soup 青菜杂割汤	(by bowl) 每碗 ¥18.00 (Tureen) 每窝 ¥50.00
Sliced Fish in Supreme Soup 豪门鱼羹	(by bowl) 每碗 ¥16.00 (Tureen) 每窝 ¥48.00
Enoki Mushroom & Conpoy Potage 雪菇干贝羹	(by bowl) 每碗 ¥18.00 (Tureen) 每窝 ¥50.00

Home-Made Seafood Dishes 海鲜私房菜

Sauteed Shrimp with Salted Egg 爆炒咸蛋虾	¥68.00
Sauteed Shrimp in "Long Jing" Tea Leaves 爆炒龙井虾仁	¥68.00
Sauteed Shrimp in Cucumber in Yunnan Style 云南爆炒黄瓜虾仁	¥68.00
Deep-Fried Baby Croaker in Ning-Bo Style 宁波干炸小黄鱼	¥28.00/条
Scallop in Soya Bean and Garlic 蒜味豆汁干贝	¥68.00
Stir-Fried Egg White and Crabmeat 炒蟹肉蛋青	¥58.00
Deep-Fried Prawn with Mayonnaise & Almond 杏仁酱汁干炸虾球	¥58.00
Stuffed Squid with Minced Shrimp 虾肉添鱿鱼	¥58.00
Stewed Baby Perch in Sour Preserved Vegetable 酸菜炖桂鱼	¥68.00

Chinese Country Dishes 农家菜

Braised Chicken and Chestnut 栗子蒸鸡	¥48.00
Poached Chicken in Ginger & Spring Onion 姜汁葱味炖鸡	Half (半只) ¥58.00 Whole (全只) ¥58.00
Braised Pork Meat Served in Square Size 酱汁蒸方肉	¥58.00
Sweet & Sour Pork 糖醋肉	¥38.00
Braised Pork Pettitoes with Spicy Sweet Sauce 红烧蹄膀	¥58.00
Deep-Fried Chicken Ball with Hot Red Chili in "Hunan Style" 湖南辣子鸡	¥48.00
Crispy Pepperoni Duckling in Cantonese Style 栗茸香酥鸭	¥58.00

Roasted Meat Items 烧烤

Marinated Goose Wings 卤水鹅翼	¥ 35.00
Honey Glazed Barbecued Pork 蜜汁叉烧肉	¥ 38.00
Charcoal Pork Neck Meat 炭烧猪头肉	¥ 38.00
Marinated Chicken with Superior Soya Sauce 豉油皇鸡	¥ 38.00
Roast Goose in Chao Lian Style 潮莲烧鹅	¥ 40.00
Pigeon in Soya Sauce 豉油皇乳鸽	Each(每只) ¥ 28.00
Roasted Meat (Combinations) 烧味拼盘	Two Kinds(双拼) ¥ 38.00
	Three Kinds(三拼) ¥ 38.00

Healthy Vegetable Dishes 素菜

Sauteed Green Bean with Beancurd Sheets & Preserved Vegetable 雪里蕻毛豆百叶	¥ 45.00
Deep-Fried Beancurd Sheets Roll 炸豆腐皮卷	¥ 38.00
Home-Made Assorted Vegetable in Hot-Pot with Preserved Bean Sauce 火锅乳汁家乡蔬菜窝	¥ 38.00
Stewed Seafood and Beancurd 海鲜炖豆腐	¥ 58.00
Stir-Fried Spinach and Dried Fish with Garlic 蒜茸浦鱼炒菠菜	¥ 38.00

Rice and Noodles of North and South 南北米饭面食

Noodles with Lamb in Beijing Style 京味羊肉炆锅面	¥ 45.00
Shredded Chicken Meat with Noodles in Soup 鸡丝煨面	¥ 45.00
Stir-Fried Glutinous Pudding with Pork in Ningbo Style 肉丝炒年糕	¥ 45.00
Noodles with Spicy Sauce in Sichuan Style 四川担担面	¥ 42.00
Fried Rice with River Shrimp & Scrambled Egg 河虾蛋炒饭	¥ 48.00
Fried Rice with Shrimp and Chicken Sauce 鸡肉虾炒饭	¥ 50.00
Boiled Chicken and Babe Abalone with Noodles 小鲍鱼贵妃鸡捞饭	¥ 50.00
Sliced Fish and Preserved Egg with E-Fu Noodles in Soup (Tureen) 皮蛋鱼片窝伊面	¥ 48.00

Set Meals 套餐

Roasted Meat Combination of Two	烧味双拼
---------------------------------	------

Eggplant & Beancurd in Hot-Pot in Sichuan Style	茄子豆腐煲
Pomfret in Beancurd Paste in Taiwan Style	台式豆瓣松鱼
Stir-Fried Two Squids & Broccoli	西兰花炒双鱿
Frog with Fungus & Lily Flower in Hot-Pot	金针木耳田鸡煲
Salted Cabbage & Eel in Hot-Pot	潮式咸菜膳煲
Signature Beef Steak	花纹牛排
Braised Beancurd with Assorted Meat	红烧八珍豆腐
Sweet & Sour Pork Rib with Pineapple	糖醋菠萝猪排
Steamed Fish Head with Olive Date	橄榄角蒸鱼头
Stewed Roast Duck with Bitter Squash & Black Bean Sauce	豉汁凉瓜炖烧鸡
Steamed Chicken in Chili & Preserved Beancurd Sauce	椒丝腐乳蒸鸡
Menu for One (Choose 1 dish served with rice, vegetable and soup)	
一位(自选小菜一款附白饭、蔬菜及例汤)	¥ 45.00
Menu for Two (Choose 2 dishes served with rice, vegetable, two bowls of soup & dessert)	
两位(自选小菜两款附白饭、蔬菜及例汤两碗及甜品)	¥ 88.00
Menu for Four (Choose 4 dishes served with 4 bowls of soup & dessert)	
四位(自选小菜四款附白饭、蔬菜及例汤四碗及甜品)	¥ 168.00

Desserts from All over the Country 南北甜品

Small	小点	¥ 10.00
Medium	中点	¥ 12.00
Large	大点	¥ 15.00
Special	特点	¥ 18.00

Desserts with Low Sugar Content 低糖甜品

Deep-Fried Banana and Egg White Dumpling	炸蛋白豆沙香蕉	¥ 15.00
Sweet Red Bean Paste Pan Cake	豆沙锅饼	¥ 15.00
Glutinous Rice in Sweet Sauce (for Four Persons)	甜汤八宝饭(四位用)	¥ 48.00
Coconut Sweet Soup with Mango, Sago and Pomelo	椰水芒果柚子露	¥ 15.00

Drinks 饮品

Soft Drinks (Coca-Cola, Sprite, Fanta)	各式汽水(可乐、雪碧、芬达)	¥ 8.00
Mineral Water	矿泉水	¥ 8.00

Orange Juice (Glass) 橙汁(杯)	¥10.00
Orange Juice (Jar) 橙汁(罐)	¥28.00
Coke Light (Can) 无糖可乐(听)	¥15.00
Perrier Water 法国矿泉水	¥13.00
Chinese Tea (Per Person) 中国名茶(每位)	¥3.00
Coffee 咖啡	¥10.00

VIII Translate the following from Chinese into English and at the same time try to get familiar with some facts concerning tourism.

A

说起北京最有名的商业区，当属全长约1 500米，北起中国美术馆，南至东长安街的王府井大街。它和纽约的第五大道，东京的银座，上海的外滩一样享誉中外。

但在辽、金时代，王府井只是一个不出名的村落。元代以后，人烟逐渐稠密，当时称之丁字街。明代，这里修起了十座王府，王府井也就初具规模，改称十王府街。清代废十王，改称王府街或王府大街。1915年，北洋政府绘制《北京四郊详图》时，把这条街划分为三段：北段称王府大街，中段称八面槽，南段因有一眼甜井，与王府合称，就成了“王府井大街”。

1903年开业的东安市场百货云集，因此成了北京人爱逛的地方。王府井林林总总的商店里日用百货、五金电料、服装鞋帽、珠宝钻石、金银首饰，琳琅满目，商品销售量极大，成了寸土寸金的经商宝地。近年来，这条大街经改建扩建，已经拥有了亚洲最大的商业楼宇，集中了大型商场、宾馆与专卖店、中外品牌店、中华老字号和国内旅行社指定的大型购物场所。每天这条街接待中外顾客多达百万人次。外文书店、百货大楼、工美大楼、丹耀大厦、王府女子百货商店、穆斯林大厦、新东安市场与盛锡福、全聚德、同升和、东来顺、四联美发、百草药店构成了这条810米商气十足的现代化商业街。1996年投资10亿多元开始的王府井扩建改造工程已经完工。新建的东方广场成为它的另一大景观；完全仿照明、清的建筑风格设计装潢的老北京一条街的面积由500平方米扩大到2 700平方米，共有自然店铺40家，集中了一大批中华老字号名店，如内联升、步瀛斋的鞋，盛锡福、马聚源的帽子，瑞蚨祥的丝绸，王麻子的剪刀，戴月轩的湖笔徽墨，汲古阁的古玩玉器，元长厚的茶叶，稻香村、桂香村、祥聚公的糕点，全聚德的烤鸭，六必居的酱菜和天福号的酱肉及传统小吃和红螺果脯等。

王府井拥有京城商圈乃至全国商业界的特殊位置。如果说不到长城非好汉，那么，没有去过王府井就等于没有到过北京城！

B

如同北京的王府井、东京的银座和香港的铜锣湾，上海的外滩是上海市最繁忙的商务区。其上百年的租界历史和解放后增加的建筑交映成辉，再加上外滩对岸浦东改革开放以来短短十几年内拔地而起的摩天大楼及东方明珠电视塔等，构成了上海独特的天际线，宛如起伏跌宕的五线谱上的音符，成了万国建筑博览交响乐中凝固的音乐。蜿蜒的黄浦江和苏州河则是舞动在构成这首乐曲的建筑音符后面的彩绸，万千的游客日复一日地聆听着中国第一国际都市的音乐。

像纽约的曼哈顿位于哈德逊河和东河交汇处一样，外滩位于上海市区黄浦江和苏州河的交汇处，旧时也称“黄浦滩”，北起南苏州路，南至金陵龙路，呈新月形，其繁华的商业和观光景点成了上海的象征。许多以上海滩命名的影视剧反映了其百年的沧桑。上海滩的美景由两部分组成：“万国建筑博览”和黄浦江、苏州河风光。它们形式迥异，各持独特的美学内涵。“万国建筑博览”由26栋造型不同的大楼组成，这些建筑错落有致，傲视黄浦江。它们气宇恢弘，内外装饰豪华，线条和色彩和谐，百看不厌。它们几何状左右对称，讲究整齐与均衡，调和对比，尺度与比例，节奏和韵律，纵是由不同国家设计，彰显各派风格：巴洛克式、文艺复兴式、哥特式、古典主义式、俄罗斯式、东印度式、日本西洋式、西方现代派式、中国民族式、折中主义式，等等，不一而足。这样积淀下来建筑奇葩赋予观者一种全新的审美感受。

如果说这些建筑物是人为的杰作，那么衬托它们的则是永恒的两条河。它们波光粼粼，海鸥盘旋飞翔在江面上，巨轮和小舟竞航，船舶的汽笛声和水鸟的鸣叫声此起彼伏。到了华灯初上时，河上岸上天上，星光月光灯光交相辉映，美不胜收。

IX Try to find the websites of such metropolitan cities as Beijing and Shanghai, and get to know something about them.

Please refer to the following websites:

www.beijing.gov.cn

www.bjbus.com

www.bjradio.com.cn

www.bjjs.gov.cn

www.shanghai.gov.cn

www.online.sh.cn

www.expo2010china.com

Unit Ten

Tours of Residential Quarters



Dialogues



Dialogue A



- A:** Hi, nice to see you again. This time I would like you to tell me something about a tendency I have noticed recently.
- B:** Don't be secretive. Come to the point directly.
- A:** Many tourists, especially foreign tourists like going into residential quarters for a trip. What do they want to know?
- B:** I've shown them around some newly built residential quarters. I find they visit these residential quarters for different purposes.
- A:** For what purposes?
- B:** Some are preparing to come to China for business or residence. Just like we Chinese people, they anticipate a better future for China because they have observed a continuous, fast economic growth of China for more than twenty years, while in their countries, economy has fallen into a decline. It is very hard for them to get a job. They want to come to China for employment. Before they make their decision, they want to get some first-hand information about average Chinese people's life. Like China towns in foreign countries, many foreign towns are appearing in big Chinese cities like Beijing and Shanghai.

- A:** They are learning Chinese as we are learning English.
- B:** They also try their best to get into contact with Chinese citizens. They go to the clinics attached to the community, or local marketplaces. They admire the Chinese people because most Chinese goods are low in prices. They also praise the community administrative organs for their efficiency in turning the communities into safe and harmonious ones.
- A:** Certainly. We feel safe when we go out at night, which is unimaginable in many countries.
- B:** But we do have our problems, which are caused by our rapid progress as pointed out by our visitors from the viewpoint of foreigners.
- A:** Can you give me an example?
- B:** Yes. Traffic jams. In rush hours, even a mile's distance, you have to drive for 10 minutes. And housing prices are going up year by year. Many people are complaining about these problems.
- A:** Maybe these problems are unavoidable in the progress of society. But sooner or later we may find ways out.
- B:** You're always optimistic.

Dialogue B



(M = manager, G = guest)

- M:** Good morning, sir. You asked to see me?
- G:** Yes, I did. I'm not at all happy.
- M:** What's wrong exactly?
- G:** It's my steak.
- M:** What's wrong with it, sir?
- G:** It is tough as oxhide. When I told your waiter about it, he did not take any notice.
- M:** I'm extremely sorry about it, sir. I'm certain the waiter didn't mean to be rude. Perhaps he didn't understand you, did he?
- G:** Why didn't he? What's he here for?

- M:** I do apologize for it. I'll have the steak changed right away.
- G:** That's much better. A little service at last. Shall I pay for the tough one?
- M:** Here comes the new one. Please take your time and enjoy your meal.
- G:** Thank you for your help.

Reading Material

Organizing tours of residential quarters is quite lucrative. It increases a city's reception capacity, when otherwise idle rooms in community are turned into temporary or provisional hostel rooms for tourists, and creates a lot of jobs for laid-off workers, as they can serve as cooks, owners of family hostels, tour guides, etc.

It is almost always a problem to any city government that is devoted to developing tourism to build many hotels to meet the need of tourists in busy seasons of tourism but to suffer when these hotel rooms lie there idle in slack seasons of tourism. To invest in the construction of hotels or not, that is a question. Just like many Olympic host cities, when they have invested a staggering amount of money in building Olympic amenities for the event, only to find they are left in an economic quagmire when the Olympic teams have left and the sports venues they have built are left there like a herd of white elephants, nice to look at, but useless. The maintenance of such facilities begins to siphon off their strained budget. It is a good case in point for cities ambitious to develop tourism.

But once the organizers of tourism turn their eyes to communities, they find a way out. Many residential quarters have spare apartments on lease. These apartments are well furnished with all the necessary equipment for life. Owners are often laid-off workers or former employees of institutions or factories. With some training, they are the ready force for hospitality industry.

When it comes to the training of such workers, the most difficult part is to train them to speak English as there are more and more international tourists coming from different countries to China. By the way, some knowledge



of culture difference is necessary; otherwise there might be some misunderstanding arising between the host and the guest.

By leasing out one's home to tourists, the owner of the house can make some money, and to some extent, in the case when he happens to be out of job he now employs himself as the boss of a small family hostel, earning more than he is employed by others. If he is in the mood to show his cooking skills, he may just as well cook some typical Chinese dishes for his guests, on the one hand to show the profound Chinese cooking culture, and on the other to make some more money. Some tourists especially enjoy joining in family style activities, and they may invite the family members of such a family hostel to join in various activities, singing a folk song, a piece of Peking opera, teaching the guests paper cutting, knitting Chinese knots, to name only a few.



1 **come to the point**: directly address what one wants to talk about

Many students like showing their English. When they are asked to make a presentation, they never come to the point, but beat about the bush. 许多学生喜欢显摆他们的英语。有人让他们演讲时,他们总是不着边际,说不到点子上。

2 **fall into a decline**: get into a period where one's business or work is not as good as before

On the one hand, China's economy is developing by leaps and bounds, and on the other, the economy of the United States has fallen into a decline. 一方面,中国经济飞速发展,另一方面,美国经济已陷入衰退。

3 **get into contact with**: get into communication with

When you arrive in Shanghai, please get into contact with me. I may be of some help to you. 当你到达上海时,请与我联系,我可能对你有所帮助。

4 **from the viewpoint of**: in the perspective of; in someone's opinion

From the viewpoint of many Western economists, China can hardly retain such a fast growth in economy in the next 10 years. 许多西方经济学家认为中国在今后 10 年中难以保持这样高速发展。

5 **complain about and complain of**

complain of: grudge about some causes that are largely from inside

The student complained of his sickness for his failure in the examination.

这个学生因考试失利而抱怨他的生病。

complain about: grudge about some causes that are largely from outside

Many students complain about the poor facilities in their schools, but seldom think of their lack of interest in studies. 许多学生抱怨所在学校设施不佳, 却极少想到自己缺乏学习兴趣。

6 sooner or later: one day in the near future or far future

If you keep doing things like this, sooner or later you will answer for them.

如果你继续如此行事, 迟早你要付出代价。

7 otherwise: in another or a different way

We were going to play football, but it was so hot that we decided to do otherwise.

我们原打算踢足球, 可是天很热, 我们就决定干别的了。

8 lay off: fire somebody or ask somebody to leave his/her work

Intel Corp. plans to lay off 800 workers from a chip-making plant in Colorado by August, after Marvell Semiconductor. 英特尔公司计划在 8 月前效法玛威尔半导体公司裁掉位于科罗拉多的芯片工厂的 800 名工人。

9 be devoted to doing something: be concentrated on something with one's total energy and attention

CORTEX is an international journal devoted to the study of the inter-relations of the nervous system and behavior, particularly as these are reflected in the effects of brain lesions on cognitive functions. CORTEX 是一本致力于神经系统和行为内在关系研究, 尤其是反映大脑损伤对认知功能影响关系的国际刊物。

10 in busy seasons: in periods when business is good

It is not always possible to book a double room, especially when in busy seasons.

在旺季预订一个双人间并不总能办到。

11 in slack seasons: in periods when business is not good

In slack seasons, he is obliged to earn extra cash by working as chef in the county town.

在淡季, 他不得不在县城里当厨师挣点儿外快。

12 invest in: throw money into something for profit

This means that China has formally opened the door for domestic institutional investors to invest in overseas securities market. 这意味着中国已经正式开放, 允许国内机构投资者投资海外证券市场。

13 only to find that: but find what really happens quite different from the expectation

I can't believe I didn't fall right down on my face, looking everywhere only to find that

it's not the way I had imagined it all in my mind. 我简直不能相信我并没有脸朝下摔到地上, 四面环顾, 却发现不是以我一直在脑子里想像的方式摔下来的。

- 14 **a white elephant**: A white elephant in some southeast Asian countries is regarded as a sacred animal, unlike other elephant domesticated for hard heavy duty labors. It is raised for some religious or court ceremonies. Its allusion is something nice to look at but useless in reality in the English language.

Traditionally, a “White Elephant” is something lying around the house that you don't want (some horridly ugly item that someone gave you as a gift or some other item unwanted for some reason). 传统上讲, 一头“白象”是你不想要的家里面乱丢着的一个物件(某人因为某原因给你的, 而你却不想要的丑陋的物件)。

- 15 **siphon off**: draw gradually something away from where it used to exist

While Japan is concerned that Chinese drilling could siphon off natural gas from Japan's territorial seabed, Beijing considers Tokyo's claim as infringing on its interests and sovereignty. 当日本关注中国钻井可能会吸走日本领海海底的天然气之时, 北京认为日本的声明侵犯了中国的利益和主权。

- 16 **turn one's eyes to something**: start to focus one's attention on something else

With money in pocket, people can turn their eyes to other forms of consumption instead of living necessities. They have more opportunities to enjoy their lives. Meanwhile the number of people in poverty also decreased greatly. 口袋里有了钱, 人们就能把自己的目光从生活必需品转向其他类型的消费, 因为他们有了更多的享受生活的机会。同时, 贫困人口数量也有了显著的减少。

- 17 **way out**: outcome that ends one's trouble or frees him/her from the trouble

“There is no way out for the time being.” I thought to myself. 我自忖, “目前没有出路”。

- 18 **on lease**: in use by contract with the lessor

Containers, in accordance with CSC regulations and requirements, both for Containers already on lease, and for those of their own use, are still in big demand. 根据中国运输公司规定和要求制作的用于出租和自用的集装箱仍然供不应求。

- 19 **be furnished with**: be supplied with or provided with, especially with the furniture or facilities for work or living

All rooms are fully furnished with Free Broadband Internet access, central air-conditioning, IDD telephone, air-condition, private bathroom, hairdryer, fully stocked mini-bar and coffee & tea making facilities. 所有的房间都装备有免费宽带互联网接口、中央空调、国际直拨电话、空调、独立卫生间、电吹风机、装得满满的冷冰箱, 及冲咖啡和茶的设施。

20 when it comes to something: so far as something is concerned

When it comes to customer service, it could be a customer, an employee, a vendor, or a consultant who's doing the pointing. 说到顾客服务, 就是顾客、工作人员、销售人员, 或者咨询人员共同努力往好做。

21 lease out: sign a contract with someone to let the person have the right of use of something, a house or a piece of land for example, for a period of time

Shanghai Metropolis Real Estate Brokerage Co., Ltd. would like the opportunity to serve you as broker to lease out your property in Pu Xi or Pu Dong. 上海大都会不动产经纪有限公司愿利用这个机会作为中间商为您出租您在浦西或浦东的房产。

22 in case and in the case of

in case: in the event of

In case I get picked up and taken away under President Bush's Military Commissions Act of October 2006, I want it on record that I am not a terrorist or an enemy combatant. and that the organization I... 万一根据2006年十月布什总统军事罪法令, 我给抓起来带走, 我要让人记录在案我不是一名恐怖分子或敌人的战斗人员。

in the case of: in the example of

In the case of Iraq, the armed action launched aimed to eliminate weapons of mass destruction — that did not exist. 在伊拉克, 发起的军事行动旨在消灭并不存在的大规模杀伤性武器。

23 be in the mood to: be in the state of mind or spirits

I'm always here when I'm in the mood to have fun. 当我想开心的时候, 我是在这里。

24 may just as well: with equal justification, reason or advantage

You may just as well tell me the truth. 你还是对我说实话的好。



• Exercises

- I** Try to read the following words and expressions taken from the text and fill the brackets with the corresponding phonetic symbols. You may look them up in your dictionary and pay attention to the relation between spellings and phonetic symbols.

residential [] a. of or relating to residence or residences

provisional	[]	<i>a.</i>	serving for the time being; temporary
hostel	[]	<i>n.</i>	a supervised lodging for usually young travelers — called also youth hostel
laid-off	[]	<i>a.</i>	unemployed
slack	[]	<i>a.</i>	wanting in activity ; dull (a slack market)
quagmire	[]	<i>n.</i>	a difficult, precarious, or entrapping position; predicament
amenity	[]	<i>n.</i>	something that conduces to comfort, convenience, or enjoyment
venue	[]	<i>n.</i>	a place in which take place the alleged events
siphon off	[]	<i>v.</i>	to convey, draw off, or empty by or as if by a siphon, often used with off
hospitality	[]	<i>n.</i>	hospitable treatment, reception, or disposition
graffito	[]	<i>pl.</i>	graffiti
		<i>n.</i>	scribbles on walls

II Give definitions to the mentioned words.

1. What is meant by residential?
2. What is the meaning of the word “provisional”?
3. What is a hostel? What differences are there between a hotel and a hostel?
4. What is meant by the phrase “laid-off”?
5. What happens to a shop when it is in a slack season?
6. How do you feel when you are in a quagmire?
7. What are amenities?
8. What is a venue?
9. How do you understand the phrase “siphon off”?
10. How do you explain the word “hospitality”?

III Discuss the following questions with your classmates.

1. Why do some tourists enjoy visiting residential quarters?
2. What programs can be included into the tour of residential quarters?
3. What people can be employed in tours of residential quarters?
4. What can tour guides introduce to visitors of residential quarters?

5. What dishes can you prepare for your guests?
6. In what ways can you improve the friendship between the Chinese residents and foreign tourists?
7. Describe something typical of Chinese but liked most by foreign tourists.
8. Introduce your family to your guests.
9. Introduce some community activities to your guests.
10. What plan do you want to make to promote tours of residential quarters?

IV Circle the letter before the best choice of the four alternatives.

1. A neighborhood committee is the governmental administrative representative organ at the _____ level in China.
A. lowest B. intermediate C. highest D. medium
2. A residential quarters usually has a property management company in charge of security, cleaning and greening of the residential quarters. The company is selected by the _____.
A. property owners committee B. the neighborhood committee
C. local government D. local police station
3. The guards of residential quarters are in most cases from _____.
A. rural areas B. urban areas C. local communities D. Both A and B
4. Graffiti are _____ to get rid of from public places.
A. difficult B. easy C. not difficult D. Both A and B
5. Peddlers should be advised to be regular venders to sell their commodities in market places. Otherwise, they may _____ streets and residential quarters.
A. mess B. tidy C. flee D. clean
6. When a place is stricken by natural disasters, neighborhood committees often organize _____.
A. charities B. chaste C. charitable D. chastity
7. A temporary resident on moving into a rented apartment should _____ to the local police station for a temporary residence permit.
A. apply B. demand C. inquire D. require
8. A good neighbor is better than a faraway _____.
A. next door B. friend C. relative D. brother
9. Keep-fit exercise is _____ to good health.
A. conducive B. deductive C. reductive D. productive

10. Which of the following has not been fully tapped for developing tourism?
 A. Hotels. B. Hostels. C. College dormitories. D. Guest houses.

V Match the words or expressions in the following columns.

A	B
neighbourhood committee	承租者
property management company	业主委员会
proprietors' committee	物业管理公司
tenant	居委会
lessor	产权
property rights	出租人
use rights	使用权
community committee	绿化居住区域
greening inhabited area	社区委员会
security guard	租赁合同
lease contract	保安

VI Match the following phrases in their proper forms with the sentences below the square.

come to the point	fall into a decline	get into contact with
from the viewpoint of	sooner or later	complain of
complain about	lay off	be devoted to
in . . . seasons	way out	on lease
be furnished with	when it comes to . . .	lease out
in the case of	in case	be in the mood to
may just as well		

- _____, the hotel rate is reduced by half.
- For one reason or another, I simply can not find a _____ to meet the demand of my teacher.
- Why don't you _____ directly instead of beating about the bush?
- When I _____ her, she was then in hospital and needed help herself.
- _____ an outsider, I can not understand their behavior in casting slanders on

- each other despite their twenty years' marriage.
6. _____ their marriage will come to an end.
 7. I know it is because he is _____ and has to stay at home that their marriage comes to a red light.
 8. No matter how he _____ her wife, she feels no regret for her decision on the divorce.
 9. She kept _____ his poor family and inadequate education.
 10. He did not _____ his disease that made him lose his job.
 11. The old custom by now _____ with young people turning their eyes to new forms of entertainment.
 12. Since you quarrel with her every day, you _____ ask for a divorce.
 13. Seeing her pull a long face, he is no longer _____ prepare the dinner.
 14. _____ the study environment, no place is better than a library.
 15. The library _____ all kinds of facilities such as xerox machines, computers, Internet access, desk lamps and mini-bars.
 16. Rental agencies have cars _____.
 17. They _____ more than 300 cars during the summer vacation.
 18. _____ you have lost your key to the hotel room, you have to report it to the reception desk for a new one.
 19. We have prepared some more keys _____ you lose one.

VII Read the following laundry list and a sample letter of complaint with a view to knowing something about the names of Chinese and Western clothes as well as how to complain.

**HOTEL ASTOR
TIME SQUARE NEW YORK**

Date _____ 2010

Laundry List

Name _____ Room _____
Mark _____

Laundry received before 9 A. M. will be returned the same day. Unless list accompanies bundle our count must be accepted. In the event of any errors, patrons are requested to notify

the Laundry Department immediately. Not responsible for colors running or fading. No laundry service on Sundays or Holidays.

No. of pieces	Ladies'	Rate	Amount	No. of pieces	Gentlemen's	Rate	Amount
	Bloomers, cotton or silk	. 30 up			Bands	. 30	
	Blouses, silk	. 75 up			Bath robes	. 75 up	
	Blouses, cotton	. 50 up			Coats	. 75 up	
	Brassieres	. 25 up			Collars	. 05	
	Chemises	. 30 up			Collars, silk	. 06	
	Corselettes	. 40 up			Handkerchiefs	. 05	
	Combinations, silk, muslin or cotton	. 40 up			Handkerchiefs, silk	. 10	
	Dress slips	. 50 up			Hose, cotton, silk or wool (pair)	. 10	
	Dresses	. 75 up			Hose, per pair	. 15	
	Gloves	. 10			Night shirts, cotton	. 30	
	Handkerchiefs	. 05			Night shirts, silk or flannel	. 40	
	Hose, cotton or silk (pair)	. 15			Pajamas, cotton	. 40	
	Kimonos	. 75 up			Pajamas, silk or flannel	. 50	
	Negligees	. 75 up			Shirts, plain	. 30	
	Night dresses, cotton	. 40 up			Shirts, collar attached	. 35	
	Night dresses, silk	. 60 up			Shirts, dress	. 40	
	Pajamas	. 40 up			Shirts, flannel or silk	. 40	
	Pajamas, silk	. 60 up			Shirts, colored, pleated	. 35	
	Skirts	. 75 up			Shirts, collar attached	. 40	
	Smocks	. 75 up			Ties, dress	. 10 up	
	Step-ins	. 30 up			Trousers	. 75 up	
	Towels	. 10			Underdrawers, cotton		

续表

No. of pieces	Ladies'	Rate	Amount	No. of pieces	Gentlemen's	Rate	Amount
	Under-vests, flannel or silk	.20 up			Underdrawers, silk or flannel	.20	
	Uniforms, Nurses	.75 up			Undershirts, flannel, cotton	.25	
	Union suits	.75 up			Union suits, cotton	.35	
	Wash cloths	.05			Union suits, silk or flannel	.40	
					Vests	.50	

Sample letter of complaint to a tour operator accepting holiday under protest where changes made at short notice.

Your Name

Address

Date

Tour Operator's Name

Address

Dear **Sir/Madam (or name of person)** :

Re: (Booking reference number, location, and hotel)

I booked the above holiday (**from your e. g. Spring/Summer 2010 brochure**) on the (**date**) at (**name and address of travel agent**). The cost being (£ . . .) for the dates of (**date**) to (**date**).

On the (**date**) I received a telephone call from (**name of travel agent or tour operator**) informing me that the above holiday was no longer available.

I was offered the following alternatives (**e. g. refund, alternative accommodation, etc.**).

Describe why this offer is not adequate

I have contacted a number of other travel agents who have informed me that it is impossible to obtain an equivalent holiday for my party at such notice at a realistic price.

Due to the short notice period you have given me, the number in my party and the fact I have booked time off work, I feel that I am forced to accept your offer of alternative accommodation. However I wish to make it clear that I do so under protest.

However, I reserve my right to claim compensation on my return for diminution in value, loss of enjoyment, inconvenience and any out of pocket expenses which result from your breach of contract.

I believe any terms in your brochure limiting the amount of compensation I can claim could be challenged as being invalid under the Unfair Contract Terms Act 1977 and/or the Unfair Terms in Consumer Contract Regulations 1999.

I hope this clarifies my position.

Yours sincerely/faithfully,

Sign and print your name

This is only a sample letter to give you guidance on what to write. You will need to write it out and substitute your own details at the appropriate places shown in bold. Send your letter by recorded delivery and keep a copy.

VII Translate the following from Chinese into English and at the same time try to get familiar with some facts concerning tourism.

A

这个社区是一个国际化的社区。许多国际大型高科技企业进驻该地区，带来了该地区的繁荣。因此，原来较低的房地产价格在最近几年来一路飙升，上升了几乎一倍。但是房屋的租价却有相对的降低，这与大量的房地产项目的竣工有直接的关系。

你们可以看到大部分住宅楼是塔式高层建筑，也有一部分板式高层和六层的板式建筑。各个小区都有专门的物业公司管理。小区有配套的健身中心。这些健身中心一般有乒乓球室、台球室、健身器械室，高档小区还有自己的游泳馆、体育馆，可以在里面打排球、篮球或者羽毛球等。随着人们生活水平的提高，小汽车正在快速地进入普通人的

家庭，拥有私家车已不再是普通人一个遥不可及的梦。现在，在这个社区，三分之一的家庭已经购买了私家车。但是一个显而易见的问题是当时的设计没有考虑到现在的发展进度，没有预留足够的停车位，而设计的地下停车场由于收费较高和不方便，愿意使用的人没有多少。因此，一到夜晚，经常有人难以在地面停车场里找到停车位，只好把车停在消防车道内，引起消防隐患。

随着该地区人口的增加，许多商家看到了这里巨大的商机。一些国际知名的超市和连锁店，如家乐福、沃尔玛、华堂、百安居、易家家居都准备在该地区开设商店。有些商店今年五一就能投入营业，届时，该地区的居民就可以享受便捷的服务了。

自从这里建设了众多的小区后，公交线路也延伸到了这里，从这里无需倒车，就能直达各个火车站和机场，正在建设中的轻轨铁路也将从社区旁边经过，为居民提供了便捷的交通条件。

小区还有相当好的教育条件，有好几个幼儿园、小学和中学，其中不乏本地名校。此外，还有两所高等院校和一些著名的科研机构，形成了良好的文化氛围。

各个小区都有自己的医务所，大病可以到周围的大医院就诊，这些医院中西医都有，内外科齐全，能够提供很好的医疗服务。

B

这是一个典型的下岗职工家庭，有三口人，男主人54岁，女主人51岁，他们的姑娘正在上大学，学计算机专业。夫妇两人下岗前都是一家国有企业的工人。由于工厂效益不好，裁员下岗。

刚开始的时候，他们很难适应，由于没有什么社会上急需的技能，再就业比较困难。地方政府组织了再就业工程，举办了免费的再就业技能培训班，如烹饪、保育等课程。通过学习，掌握一定技能后，他们就能顺利地找到像厨师和保姆这样的工作。可是，许多城市人养成了依赖政府的习惯，不愿意从事服务行业，觉得拉不下面子来。有些则是在国营单位干惯了，觉得私营和外企都不是正规的职业，他们的就业思想急需改观，否则一面是有工作没人干，一面是有人却不干。尽管，城市里近年来急需家政服务人员，但是本地人干的很少。尤其是每年春节，保姆们都要回家，保姆需求的缺口很大。

其实，服务行业属于第三产业。随着社会现代化程度的提高，将来越来越多的人将会从事第三产业。这些年，保姆的收入不断提高，每月工资从四百已经涨到六百以上。雇主还要提供食宿。带孩子的不管做饭，做饭的不管带孩子。由于是买方市场，找一个可心的保姆还真是不容易。那些有文化，懂英语，会开车的保姆就更是奇货可居了。工资都要几千元。有些人羡慕人家那些当老板的，认为人家挣钱多。可是他们想过没有，

那些老板都有投资的风险。一旦投错资，或者市场不好，投资就可能打了水漂。当打工仔的风险就小得很，除非你遇上那些黑心包工头。

IX Try to find some websites of communities and get to know something about them.

Please refer to the following websites:

www.lh.sz.gov.cn

www.wjsq.com

www.hlgnet.com

www.skyoto.com

Glossary

abundant	<i>a.</i>	in large quantity	(2)
accommodations	<i>n.</i>	place such as building or room for people to live in	(1)
accompaniment	<i>n.</i>	process of accompanying a singer or musical instrument player	(6)
aerobic	<i>a.</i>	living, active, or occurring only in the presence of oxygen	(5)
agouti	<i>n.</i>	刺豚鼠	(4)
alien	<i>a.</i>	belonging or relating to another person, place, or thing; strange	(8)
alley	<i>n.</i>	a narrow street, especially a thoroughfare through the middle of a block giving access to the rear of lots or buildings	(8)
amateur	<i>n.</i>	one who engages in a pursuit, study, science, or sport as a pastime rather than as a profession	(7)
amenity	<i>n.</i>	usually used in plural, things or facilities such as for sports or shopping that make people's life convenient or easy	(1)
anaconda	<i>n.</i>	water snake	(4)
anaerobic	<i>a.</i>	living, active, occurring, or existing in the absence of free oxygen	(5)
aquarium	<i>n.</i>	an establishment where aquatic collections of living organisms are kept and exhibited	(7)
asthma	<i>n.</i>	a condition often of allergic origin, marked by continuous or paroxysmal labored breathing accompanied by wheezing, by a sense of constriction in the chest, and often by attacks of coughing or gasping	(5)
barnstorm	<i>v.</i>	travel around putting on shows	(4)
belch	<i>v.</i>	to expel gas suddenly from the stomach through the mouth	(2)
Beowulf	<i>n.</i>	an Anglo-Saxon epic in alliterative verse and heroic style of	

		unknown authorship. The story is set in Denmark or South Sweden and tells how the hero, Beowulf defeats the monster Grendel and Grendel's mother but is eventually himself killed in slaughtering a dragon.	(7)
boa constrictor	<i>n.</i>	a kind of huge snake in South America	(4)
boost	<i>v.</i>	cause to improve or increase	(2)
bronchitis	<i>n.</i>	inflammation of the bronchial tubes	(5)
brooch	<i>n.</i>	an ornament that is held by a pin or clasp and is worn at or near the neck	(9)
bush pilot	<i>n.</i>	a pilot that flies a small airplane over unsettled areas	(4)
calligraphy	<i>n.</i>	artistic, stylized, or elegant handwriting or lettering	(3)
capuchin monkey	<i>n.</i>	卷尾猴	(4)
casino	<i>n.</i>	a building or room used for social amusements; specifically, one used for gambling	(8)
cloisonné	<i>a.</i>	of, relating to, or being a style of enamel decoration in which the enamel is applied and fired in raised cells (as of soldered wires) on a usually metal background	(9)
comedian	<i>n.</i>	an actor who plays comic roles	(7)
comic	<i>n.</i>	of a comedian's performance	(7)
consolidate	<i>v.</i>	strengthen; secure	(2)
coordination	<i>n.</i>	organizing various people or things involved in an activity	(2)
cotta	<i>n.</i>	surplice 白袈裟	(3)
curio	<i>n.</i>	something considered novel, rare, or bizarre	(9)
cymbal	<i>n.</i>	kind of percussion instrument made of bronze and played in pairs to strike each other	(6)
destination	<i>n.</i>	the place one goes to	(1)
disinfect	<i>v.</i>	kill or remove bacteria and virus	(6)
disposable	<i>a.</i>	left after what is necessary for life is paid for having access to sth./sb.; be in touch with and able to use	(1)
egret	<i>n.</i>	白鹭	(4)
enhance	<i>v.</i>	raise; strengthen	(2)
epic	<i>n.</i>	a long narrative poem in elevated style recounting the deeds of a legendary or historical hero	(7)
ethos	<i>n.</i>	a set of ideas or attitudes held by a particular group of people for	

		their activities	(2)
facility	<i>n.</i>	buildings, services or equipments for a certain purpose	(1)
far-flung	<i>a.</i>	extensive; remote	(3)
fauna	<i>n.</i>	animals collectively referred to as	(4)
flora	<i>n.</i>	plants collectively referred to as	(4)
frolic	<i>v.</i>	play in a noisy way	(6)
gabardine	<i>n.</i>	dress material of cotton or silk with wool lining (as used for raincoats) 华达呢	(7)
gamble	<i>v.</i>	to play a game for money or property	(1)
glaze	<i>n.</i>	a smooth glossy or lustrous surface or finish	(9)
gong	<i>n.</i>	kind of percussion instrument made of bronze and played with a stick	(6)
gown	<i>n.</i>	a loose flowing outer garment formerly worn by men	(8)
Guayana	<i>n.</i>	a highland area in Venezuela	(4)
gymnasium	<i>n.</i>	a large room used for various indoor sports (as basketball or boxing) and usually equipped with gymnastic apparatus	(7)
hawk	<i>n.</i>	鹰	(4)
hearsay	<i>n.</i>	rumor	(6)
heart-throbbing	<i>a.</i>	exciting	(6)
heron	<i>n.</i>	苍鹭	(4)
highlight	<i>n.</i>	a part emphasized	
	<i>vt.</i>	emphasize; make more conspicuous	(2)
hospitality	<i>n.</i>	friendly behavior towards a guest	(1)
hostel	<i>n.</i>	a supervised lodging for usually young travelers, called also youth hostel	(8)
howler monkey	<i>n.</i>	吼猴	(4)
hyacinth	<i>n.</i>	风信子	(4)
identify	<i>v.</i>	name somebody who he/she is	(1)
implementation	<i>n.</i>	carrying out (of plans)	(2)
infrastructure	<i>n.</i>	basic facilities such as supply of water, electricity, roads and telecommunication conditions	(2)
infuse	<i>v.</i>	put or fill in	(2)
ink-slab	<i>n.</i>	stone utensil for grinding an inkstick in some water	(7)
kingfisher	<i>n.</i>	翠鸟	(4)

knack	<i>n.</i>	ingenious way of doing things	(6)
lodging	<i>a.</i>	living	(1)
lump	<i>n.</i>	a piece or mass of indefinite size and shape	(5)
macaw	<i>n.</i>	金刚鹦鹉	(4)
Maldives	<i>n.</i>	马尔代夫	(3)
mall	<i>n.</i>	an urban shopping area featuring a variety of shops surrounding a usually open-air concourse reserved for pedestrian traffic	(1)
mausoleum	<i>n.</i>	burial place	(3)
mechanization	<i>n.</i>	process or result of using machines to complete a production task	(6)
metropolis	<i>n.</i>	the chief or capital city of a country, state, or region	(8)
minstrel	<i>n.</i>	one of a class of medieval musical entertainers; especially a singer of verses to the accompaniment of a harp	(7)
monologue	<i>n.</i>	a dramatic sketch performed by one actor	(7)
multiple	<i>a.</i>	many	(1)
multiplier effect	<i>n.</i>	result which is several times more than what is intended	(1)
New Testament	<i>n.</i>	the part of the Bible that deals with the life and teachings of Jesus Christ and Christianity in the early church	(1)
nostalgia	<i>n.</i>	homesickness; reminiscence of the past	(6)
Old Testament	<i>n.</i>	the first part of the Bible	(1)
otter	<i>n.</i>	水獭	(4)
penguin	<i>n.</i>	any of various erect short-legged flightless aquatic birds of the southern hemisphere	(7)
perpetuate	<i>v.</i>	cause something to continue	(3)
predict	<i>v.</i>	foresee	(2)
preliminary	<i>a.</i>	basic	(2)
productivity	<i>n.</i>	rate at which goods are produced	(1)
propitious	<i>n.</i>	favorable; well-displayed	(6)
provisional	<i>a.</i>	serving for the time being; temporary	(10)
quagmire	<i>n.</i>	a difficult, precarious, or entrapping position; predicament	(10)
quarantine	<i>n.</i>	separation	
	<i>v.</i>	separate for the purpose of isolating the contaminated material from getting into contact with the population	(6)

recreation	<i>n.</i>	things one does to relax	(1)
refer	<i>v.</i>	to talk about	(6)
reincarnation	<i>n.</i>	rebirth	(3)
rejuvenation	<i>n.</i>	making lively or energetic again	(2)
relic	<i>n.</i>	a survivor or remnant left after decay, disintegration, or disappearance	(2)
relish	<i>n.</i>	liking or zest	(6)
replica	<i>n.</i>	an exact reproduction	(9)
residence	<i>n.</i>	a place where one lives	(1)
residential	<i>a.</i>	of or relating to residence or residences	(1)
respiratory	<i>a.</i>	of part of the breathing organs	(5)
resurrection	<i>n.</i>	coming to life again	(3)
saturate	<i>v.</i>	to fill completely with something that permeates or pervades	(5)
scrap	<i>n.</i>	a very small piece	(1)
scraper	<i>n.</i>	a device that removes something from a surface by usually repeated strokes of an edged instrument	(5)
seal	<i>n.</i>	any of numerous carnivorous marine mammals that live chiefly in cold regions and have limbs modified into webbed flippers adapted primarily to swimming	(3)
sewage	<i>n.</i>	refuse liquids or waste matter carried off by sewers	(5)
sill	<i>n.</i>	the part of a window, on which small objects can be placed	(5)
silt	<i>n.</i>	a deposit of sediment	(5)
siphon off	<i>v.</i>	to convey, draw off, or empty by or as if by a siphon (often used with off)	(10)
slack	<i>a.</i>	wanting in activity; dull (a slack market)	(5)
slag	<i>n.</i>	the dross or scoria of a metal	(5)
souvenir	<i>n.</i>	something that serves as a reminder	(8)
speed	<i>v.</i>	quicken	(2)
stable	<i>v.</i>	keep in a place	(6)
stadium	<i>n.</i>	a large usually unroofed building with tiers of seats for spectators at sports events	(7)
stardom	<i>n.</i>	performers altogether or the status of a performer	(7)

stimulate	<i>v.</i>	cause to move or act	(2)
stork	<i>n.</i>	鹤	(4)
submerge	<i>v.</i>	to put under water	(5)
sustainable	<i>a.</i>	of something that can be used continuously	(1)
swamp	<i>n.</i>	wetland; marshland	(4)
swarm	<i>v.</i>	move in a large number and in a busy way	(1)
tepui	<i>n.</i>	tableland	(4)
terra	<i>n.</i>	earth	(3)
Testament	<i>n.</i>	the Bible	(1)
thriving	<i>a.</i>	prosperous	(1)
toucan	<i>n.</i>	巨嘴鸟; 犀鸟	(4)
tracheitis	<i>n.</i>	inflammation of the tracheal tubes	(5)
tsunami	<i>n.</i>	disastrous tidal waves	(1)
vender	<i>n.</i>	one that vends; seller	(8)
venue	<i>n.</i>	a place in which take place the alleged events	(10)
verdant	<i>a.</i>	green and fresh	(3)
walrus	<i>n.</i>	a large gregarious marine mammal related to the seal that is found in Arctic seas, has long ivory tusks, a tough wrinkled hide, and stiff whiskers, and feeds mostly on bivalve mollusks	(7)
whammy	<i>n.</i>	(slang) ① a supernatural spell for subduing an adversary 战胜敌手的一种超乎自然力的魔法 ② a serious or devastating setback 严重的或摧毁性的挫折	(2)
xylography	<i>n.</i>	the art of engraving in wood or of taking impressions from wood engravings 木刻或木版印刷	(9)

Appendix A

中国的 31 处世界遗产

长城	1987. 12 文化遗产 (附 1)
北京故宫、沈阳故宫	1987. 12 文化遗产 (附 7)
陕西秦始皇陵及兵马俑	1987. 12 文化遗产
甘肃敦煌莫高窟	1987. 12 文化遗产
北京周口店北京猿人遗址	1987. 12 文化遗产
山东泰山	1987. 12 文化与自然双重遗产
安徽黄山	1990. 12 文化与自然双重遗产
湖南武陵源国家级名胜区	1992. 12 自然遗产
四川九寨沟国家级名胜区	1992. 12 自然遗产
四川黄龙国家级名胜区	1992. 12 自然遗产
西藏布达拉宫	1994. 12 文化遗产 (附 2、附 3)
河北承德避暑山庄及周围寺庙	1994. 12 文化遗产
山东曲阜的孔庙、孔府及孔林	1994. 12 文化遗产
湖北武当山古建筑群	1994. 12 文化遗产
江西庐山风景名胜区	1994. 12 文化遗产
四川峨眉山 - 乐山风景名胜区	1996. 12 文化与自然双重遗产
云南丽江古城	1997. 12 文化遗产
山西平遥古城	1997. 12 文化遗产
江苏苏州古典园林	1997. 12 文化遗产 (附 4)
北京颐和园	1998. 11 文化遗产
北京天坛	1998. 11 文化遗产
重庆大足石刻	1999. 12 文化遗产
福建武夷山	1999. 12 文化与自然双重遗产
四川青城山和都江堰	2000. 11 文化遗产

河南洛阳龙门石窟	2000. 11 文化遗产
明清皇家陵寝：明显陵（湖北钟祥市）、 清东陵（河北遵化市）、清西陵（河北易县）、 盛京三陵	2000. 11 文化遗产（附5、附6）（附8）
安徽古村落：西递、宏村	2000. 11 文化遗产
山西大同云冈石窟	2001. 12 文化遗产
云南三江并流	2003. 7 自然遗产
高句丽王城、王陵及贵族墓葬	2004. 7 文化遗产
澳门历史城区	2005. 7 文化遗产

附1：2002年11月，中国唯一的水上长城辽宁九门口长城通过联合国教科文组织的验收，作为长城的一部分正式挂牌成为世界文化遗产。

附2：2000年11月，拉萨大昭寺作为布达拉宫世界遗产的扩展项目被批准列入《世界遗产名录》。

附3：2001年12月，西藏拉萨罗布林卡作为布达拉宫历史建筑群的扩展项目被批准列入《世界遗产名录》。

附4：2000年11月，苏州艺圃、藕园、沧浪亭、狮子林和退思园5座园林作为苏州古典园林的扩展项目被批准列入《世界遗产名录》。

附5、附6：2003年7月，北京市的十三陵和江苏省南京市明孝陵作为明清皇家陵寝的一部分收入《世界遗产名录》。

附7：2004年7月，沈阳故宫作为明清皇宫文化遗产扩展项目列入《世界遗产名录》。

附8：2004年7月，盛京三陵作为明清皇家陵寝扩展项目列入《世界遗产名录》。

中国人类口述及非物质文化遗产代表作两项

昆曲	2001. 5
古琴	2003. 11

CHINA (PEOPLE'S REPUBLIC OF)

1987, The Great Wall

1987, Mount Taishan

- 1987, Imperial Palace of the Ming and Qing Dynasties
- 1987, Mogao Caves
- 1987, The Mausoleum of the First Qin Emperor
- 1987, Peking Man Site at Zhoukoudian
- 1990, Mount Huangshan
- 1992, Wulingyuan Scenic & Historic Interest Area
- 1992, Jiuzhaigou Valley Scenic & Historic Interest Area
- 1992, Huanglong Scenic & Historic Interest Area
- 1994, The Mountain Resort in Chengde City
- 1994, Potala Palace, Lhasa
- 1994, Temple of Confucius, the Cemetery of Confucius, and the Kong Family Mansion in Qufu
- 1994, The ancient building complex in the Wudang Mountains
- 1994, Lushan National Park
- 1996, Mt. Emei Scenic Area, including Leshan Giant Buddha Scenic Area
- 1997, Ancient City of Ping Yao
- 1997, Classical Gardens of Suzhou
- 1997, Old Town of Lijiang
- 1998, Summer Palace in Beijing
- 1998, Temple of Heaven, Beijing
- 1999, Mount Wuyi
- 1999, The Dazu Rock Carvings
- 2000, Mount Qingcheng and the Dujiangyan Irrigation System
- 2000, Ancient Villages in Southern Anhui — Xidi and Hongcun
- 2000, Longmen Grottoes
- 2000, Imperial Tombs of the Ming and Qing Dynasties
- 2001, Yungang Grottoes
- 2003, Three Parallel Rivers of Yunnan Protected Areas
- 2004, Cities and Tombs of the Ancient Koguryo Kingdom
- 2005, Historic Centre of Macao

Appendix B

国内著名旅游景点

北京

八达岭长城、故宫、天安门广场、颐和园、天坛、雍和宫、北海、香山、十三陵

天津

黄崖关长城、盘山、独乐寺

河北

承德、坝上草原、木兰围场、塞罕坝森林公园、将军泡子、避暑山庄、外八庙、董存瑞烈士陵园、金山岭长城、青龙潭旅游风景区、双塔山风景区、辽河源国家森林公园、魁星楼、汤泉行宫、北大山石海森林公园、塞外蟠龙湖、雾灵山自然保护区

山西

晋祠、恒山、五台山、五老峰、云冈石窟、壶口瀑布、王家大院、代王府九龙壁、天龙山石窟、普救寺、应县木塔、悬空寺、华严寺、渠家大院、平遥古城、绵山、乔家大院

内蒙古自治区

昭君墓、成吉思汗陵、鄂尔多斯大草原、辽中京遗址、桌子山岩画、大青沟自然保护区、呼伦贝尔草原、贺兰山、成吉思汗庙、居延海风景

黑龙江

三江自然保护区、五营国家级森林公园、亚布力滑雪旅游度假区、索非亚广场、镜泊湖、中央大街、扎龙自然保护区、五大连池、漠河、兴凯湖

吉林

吉林雾凇、北山、天池、吉林北大湖滑雪场、净月潭滑雪场、长白山瀑布与温泉群、吉林陨石、黑风口、红旗村、防川 - 鸟瞰三疆

辽宁

沈阳故宫、北陵、东陵、千山、汤岗子温泉、星海、老虎滩、傅家庄、夏家河子公园、海上泛舟、蛇岛-老铁山自然保护区、兴城古城

陕西

秦始皇兵马俑博物馆、碑林、黄河壶口瀑布、唐昭陵、大雁塔、陕西历史博物馆、华山

甘肃

炳灵寺、大地湾、大佛寺、敦煌莫高窟、伏羲庙、嘉峪关、崆峒山、拉卜楞寺、麦积山、武威文庙、兴隆山、炳灵寺

宁夏回族自治区

田州古塔、平罗玉皇阁、同心清真大寺、中卫高庙、固原须弥山石窟、西吉火石寨风景区、滚钟口、将台堡红军长征会师纪念碑、鸣翠湖、北武当生态旅游区

青海

三江源、鸟岛、孟达天池、互助县南门峡、大通县老爷车、坎布拉森林公园、龙羊峡水电站

新疆维吾尔自治区

叶城、火焰山、赛里木湖、乌鲁木齐革命烈士纪念馆、巴音布鲁克草原、交河故城、葡萄沟、林则徐纪念馆、博格达峰、香妃墓、阿帕霍加墓、新喀纳斯湖、菊花台

山东

烟台山景区、青岛栈区、崂山、鲁迅公园、八大关、泰山、孔府、孔庙、孔林、济南趵突泉、千佛山、大明湖

江苏

中山陵、雨花台、夫子庙、虎丘、寒山寺、瘦西湖、鼋头渚

上海

外滩、豫园、老城隍庙、上海博物馆、东方明珠、中共一大会址、上海大剧院

浙江

西湖、天目山、浙西大峡谷、富春江小三峡、千岛湖、河姆渡遗址博物馆、镇海口海防遗址

福建

鼓浪屿、南普陀、万石岩、黄厝、集美

广东

珠海圆明新园、肇庆星湖风景名胜区、深圳华侨城旅游度假区、阳江海陵岛、大角湾风景名胜、深圳观澜湖高尔夫球会、丹霞山风景名胜区、广州白云山风景名胜区、清新温矿泉旅游度假区

海南

七仙岭温泉旅游区、太平山瀑布、南圣河小岛、琼崖公学纪念亭、中华民族文化村、枫木鹿场、木色旅游度假风景区、白沙起义纪念碑、毛感千龙洞、甘什岭铁棱自然保护区、热带作物研究所植物园、南国槟榔庄园、仙安石林、海南省民族博物馆

江西

庐山、龙虎山、三清山、鄱阳湖、滕王阁、景德镇、井冈山、婺源

安徽

天柱山、九华山、黄山、迎江寺、逍遥津、桐城文庙、琅琊山

湖北

武汉市东湖风景区、黄鹤楼、归元禅寺、湖北省博物馆、长江三峡工程坛子岭旅游区、隆中风景区、荆州博物馆、武当山风景区、当阳玉泉风景区、兴山县昭君村旅游区、宜昌中华鲟园

湖南

武陵源风景名胜区、刘少奇同志纪念馆、长沙世界之窗、南岳衡山风景名胜区、长沙岳麓山风景名胜区、岳阳楼旅游区、张家界黄龙洞旅游区、韶山毛泽东故居景区、常德桃花源风景区

河南

洛阳龙门石窟、洛阳白马寺院、关林景区、清明上河园、嵩山少林风景区、开封包公祠、郑州黄帝故里、洛阳汉光武帝原陵、洛阳龙马负图寺、洛阳王铎故居、洛阳千唐志斋

广西壮族自治区

七星景区、芦笛景区、漓江景区、北海银滩旅游区、南宁青秀山风景旅游区、北海海底

世界、桂林世外桃源旅游区、象山景区、柳州

云南

西双版纳勐养野生蝴蝶饲养场、西双版纳绿石林森林公园、西双版纳原始森林公园、西双版纳基诺民俗山寨、西双版纳热带花卉园、西双版纳民族风情园、西双版纳勐仑植物园、丽江、香格里拉

贵州

桃源峡谷、黔明寺、龙宫、赤水风景区、四洞沟、燕子岩、弘福寺、文昌阁、桫欏保护区、梵净山、红枫湖、茅台镇、黄果树瀑布、舞阳河、天河潭、香火岩峡谷、百花湖、十丈洞、竹海森林公园、荔波樟江、甲秀楼、黔灵公园、白云公园

四川

九寨沟、黄龙、峨眉山、都江堰、长江三峡、西岭雪山、青羊宫、杜甫草堂

重庆

瞿塘峡、大宁河小三峡、三峡大坝、巫峡、西陵峡、北温泉、统景、解放碑、南温泉、龚滩

西藏自治区

布达拉宫、大昭寺、八廓街、小昭寺、楚布寺、纳木错、龙王堂、罗布林卡、色吾寺、羊八井、大小清真寺、色拉寺、甘丹寺、卓玛峡谷、神湖纳木错、桑丹康桑雪山

香港

金紫荆广场、宋城、米埔、西贡、吉庆围、太平山、浅水湾、南丫岛、石阶街、万佛寺、虎豹别墅、大屿山岛、海洋公园、天坛大佛、皇后大道

澳门

葡京大酒店、南湾人工湖、南湾公园、普济禅院、融和门、圣弥额尔小堂、圣宝禄教堂

台湾

台中忠烈祠、铁砧山、文武庙、梧栖假日鱼市、五福临门神木、武陵农场、雾峰林家花园、萧家花园、雪山坑、雪山群峰、亚哥花园、益源古厝、月眉泽民树、摘星山庄

Famous Domestic Scenic Spots

Beijing

the Badaling Section of the Great Wall, the Imperial Palace (Forbidden City), Tian An Men Square, the Summer Palace, the Temple of Heaven, the Yonghe Lamasery, Beihai Park, Fragrant Hill Park, the Ming Tombs

Tianjin

the Huangya Pass Section of the Great Wall, Panshan Mountain, the Dule Temple (Solitary Joy Temple)

Hebei Province

Chengde, Bashang Grassland, the Mulan Hunting Ground, Saihanba National Forest Park, the General Marshland, the Imperial Palace of Mountain Resort and its Outlying Temples in Chengde, the Mausoleum of Dong Cunrui, the Jinshanling Section of the Great Wall, the Black Dragon Pool Tourist and Scenic Area, the Scenic Area of Double-Tower Mountain, Liaoheyuan (the source of the Liaohe River) National Forest Park, the Kuixing Tower, the Tangquan (Hot Spring) Palace, Beidashan Stone Sea Forest Park, Saiwai Panlong Lake, the Wuling Mountain National Natural Reserve

Shanxi Province

the Jinci Temple, Mount Heng, the Wutai Mountains, the Yungang Grottoes, Hukou Waterfalls, the Grand Courtyard of the Wang Family, the Nine-Dragon Wall of Duke Dai's Mansion, the Cave Temples of Tianlong Mountain, the Pujiu Temple, the Wooden Pagoda of Yingxian County, the Xuankong (Suspended) Temple, the Huayan Temple, the Grand Courtyard of the Qu Family, the Ancient City of Ping Yao, Mian Mountain, the Grand Courtyard of the Qiao Family

the Inner Mongolian Autonomous Region

the Zhaojun Tomb, the Mausoleum of Jenghis Khan, Erdos Prairie, the Historic Site of the Middle Capital of the Liao Dynasty, the Stone Pictures of Zhuozi (Table) Mountain, the Daqing Valley Natural Reserve, Hulunbeir Prairie, Helan Mountain, the Temple of Jenghis Khan, the Scenic Spots of Juyanhai Lakes

Heilongjiang Province

the Three-River Natural Reserve, Wuying National Forest Park, Yabuli Skiing Vacation

Area, Sophia Square, Jingbo Lake, Central Avenue, the Zhalong Natural Reserve, Lotus Lakes, Mohe, Xingkai Lake

Jilin Province

Jilin Rime, Mount Bei, Tianchi Lake, Jilin Beida Lake and Snow Ground, Jingyuetan Ski Resort, Changbai Mountain Waterfalls and Hot Springs, the Jilin Meteorite, Heifeng Pass, Hongqi Village, Fangchuan (a Bird's Eye View of Three Countries)

Liaoning Province

the Shenyang Imperial Palace, the North Mausoleum, the East Mausoleum, Qianshan Mountain, the Tanggangzi Hot Spring, Xinghai Bay, Laohutan Scenic Park, Fujiashuang Beach, Xiajiahezi Park, Yatching on the Sea, Snake Island—the Laotieshan Natural Reserve, the Ancient City of Xingcheng

Shaanxi Province

Emperor Qin's Terra Cotta Warriors Museum, the Forest of Stone Steles, the Hukou Waterfalls of the Yellow River, the Zhaoling Mausoleum of the Tang Dynasty, the Dayan Pagoda (Big Wild Goose Pagoda), the Shaanxi History Museum, Mount Hua

Gansu Province

the Bingling Temple, Dadiwan, the Dafo Temple, the Mogao Grottoes in Dunhuang, the Fuxi Temple, the Jiayu Pass, Mount Kongdong, the Laboleng Monastery, Mount Maiji, the Confucius Temple of Wuwei, Mount Xinglong, the Bingling Temple

The Ningxia Hui Autonomous Region

the Ancient Pagoda of Tianzhou, the Yuhuang Pavilion (the Jade Emperor's Pavilion) of Pingluo, the Tongxin Mosque, the Gao Temple of Zhongwei, Mount Xumi Grottoes of Guyuan, the Huoshizhai Scenic Area of Xiji, the Gunzhong Pass, the Jiangtaipu Monument to the Red Army's Rejoining Forces in the Long March, Mingcui Lake, Beiwudang Ecological Tourist Resort

Qinghai Province

the Three-River Waterheads, Bird Island, Tianchi Lake of Mengda, the Nanmen Valley (South Gate Valley) of Huzhu County, the Grandpa's Carriage of Datong County, Kanbula Forest Park, the Longyangxia Gorge Hydro Power Station

The Xinjiang Uigur Autonomous Region

Yecheng, Flaming Mountain, Sailimu Lake, the Urumqi Martyr Cemetery, Bayinbruk Grassland, the Grape Valley of Jiaohe Gucheng, the Lin Zexu Memorial Hall, the Bogeda

Peak Reserve, the Tomb of Xiangfei (fragrant concubine), the Tomb of Apahuojia, Kanas Lake, Juhuatai (terrace with chrysanthemums)

Shandong Province

the Scenic Spot of Yantai Mountain, the Old Port Area of Qingdao, Mount Lao, Luxun Park, the Eight Passes, Mount Tai, the Family Mansion of Confucius, the Temple of Confucius, the Forest of Confucius, Baotu Spring, Qianfo Mountain, Daming Lake

Jiangsu Province

the Zhongshan Mausoleum, the Yuhua Terrace, Fuzi Temple, Tiger Hill, the Hanshan Temple, Shouxi Lake, Yuantouzhu (a stretch of land resembling the head of a turtle)

Shanghai

Shanghai Bund, Yuyuan Garden, the Old Chenghuang Temple, Shanghai Museum, the Orient Pearl, the Site of the First National Congress of the Communist Party of China, Shanghai Opera House

Zhejiang Province

the West Lake, Tianmu Mountain, the Three Minor Gorges of the Fuchun River, Qiandao Lake (lake with thousands of islets), the Hemudu Cultural Site Museum, the Zhenhaikou Maritime Defense Site Museum

Fujian Province

Gulangyu Island, Putuo Mountain, Wanshiyan (Million Stones' Cliff), Huangcuo, Jimei

Guangdong Province

the New Yuanming Garden of Zhuhai, Xinghu Scenic Area of Zhaoqing, the Tourist and Vacation Area of Shenzhen Overseas Chinese Town, Hailing Island of Yangjiang, the Scenic Spot of Dajiao Bay, the Lake View Golf Club of Shenzhen, the Scenic Spot of Danxia Mountain, the Scenic Spot of Baiyun Mountain in Guangzhou, the Tourist and Vacation Area of Qingxin Hot Spring

Hainan Province

the Tourist Area of Qixianling Hot Spring, the Waterfalls of Taiping Mountain, the South Holy River Islet, the Memorial Pavilion of Qiongya School, Qiongya School, the Cultural Village of Chinese Nationalities, Fengmu (Maplewood) Deer Farm, the Muse Scenic Spot for Tourism and Vacation, the Monument to Baisha Uprising, the Qianlong (thousand-dragon) Cave in Maogan, the Tieling Natural Reserve in Ganshiling, the Arboretum of the Tropical Plants Research Institute, the Areca Manor of Southland, the Stone Forest of Xian

An, the Nationalities Museum of Hainan Province

Jiangxi Province

Mount Lu, Longhu Mountain, Sanqing Mountain, Boyang Lake, the Tengwangge Tower, Jingdezhen, Jinggang Mountain, Wuyuan Village

Anhui Province

Tianzhu Mountain, Jiuhua Mountain, Mount Huang, the Yingjiang Temple, Xiaoyaojin, the Confucius Temple of Tongcheng, the Langya Mountain

Hubei Province

the East Lake Scenic Area of Wuhan City, the Yellow Crane Tower, the Guiyuan Buddhist Temple, the Hubei Provincial Museum, the Tanziling Tourist Area of the Three Gorges Project, the Longzhong Scenic Area, the Jingzhou Prefecture Museum, the Scenic Area of Wudang Mountain, the Yuquan Scenic Area in Dangyang, the Zhaojun Village Tourist Area in Xingshan County, the Chinese Sturgeon Park in Yichang

Hunan Province

the Wulingyuan Scenic Area, the Liu Shaoqi Memorial, the Window of the World in Changsha, the Scenic area of Mount Heng, the Scenic Area of Yuelu Mountain in Changsha, the Tourist Area of the Yueyang Tower, the Yellow Dragon Cave Tourist Area of Zhangjiajie, the Former Residence of Mao Zedong in Shaoshan, the Taohuayuan Scenic Area in Changde

Henan Province

the Longmen Grottoes in Luoyang, the Baima Temple of Luoyang, the Scenic Spot of Guanlin, Qingming Shanghe Garden, the Scenic Area of Mount Song, the Baogong Temple in Kaifeng, the Birthplace of Emperor Yellow of Zhengzhou, the Original Mausoleum of Emperor Guangwu of the Han Dynasty in Luoyang, the Longma Futu Temple of Luoyang, the Former Residence of Wang Duo in Luoyang, the Site of Thousands of Epitaphs of the Tang Dynasty in Luoyang

The Guangxi Zhuang Autonomous Region

the Qixing (seven stars) Scenic Spots, the Ludi Scenic Spots, the Lijiang River Scenic Area, the Yintan Tourist and Vacation Area of Beihai, the Qingxiu Mountain Scenic and Tourist Area of Nanning, the Oceanic World of Beihai, the Xanadu Tourist Area of Guilin, the Elephant Mountain Scenic Area, Liuzhou

Yunnan Province

Mengyang Butterfly Farm in Xishuangbanna, the Lushilin Forest Park in Xishuangbanna, the Virgin Forest Park of Xishuangbanna, Kinuo Mountain Village of Xishuangbanna, the Tropical Flower Garden of Xishuangbanna, the Ethnic Custom Garden of Xishuangbanna, the Menglun Arboretum of Xishuangbanna, Shangri-La in Lijiang

Guizhou Province

the Taoyuan Gorge, the Qianming Temple, the Dragon Palace, the Chishui Scenic Area, the Sidong (four holes) Valley, the Swallow Cliff, the Hongfu Temple, the Wenchang Pavilion, the Shaluo Natural Reserve, Fanjing Mountain, Hongfeng Lake, Maotai Town, the Waterfalls in Huangguoshu, the Wuyang River, the Tianhe Pool, the Xianghuoyan Gorge, Baihua (hundred flower) Lake, the Shizhang (30-meter deep) Hole, the Zhuhai (Bamboo Sea) Forest Park, the Zhangjiang River with Banks Flanked Up with Litchi Trees, the Jiaxiu Tower, Qianling Park, Baiyun Park

Sichuan Province

the Jiuzhai Valley, Huanglong (Yellow Dragon), Ermei Mountain, the Dujiang Weir, the Three Gorges of the Yangtze River, the Snow Mountains of Xiling, the Qingyang Palace, the Thatch-Roofed Hall of Dufu

Chongqing

the Qutang Valley, the Three Minor Gorges of Daninghe, the Dam on the Three Gorges, the Wu Valley, the Xiling Valley, the North Hot Spring, Tongjing, the Monument to the Liberation, the South Hot Spring, Gongtan

the Tibet Autonomous Region

the Potala Palace, the Dazhao Temple, Bakuo Street, the Xiaozhao Temple, the Chubu Temple, Namucuo, the Longwang Hall, Luobulinka, the Sewu Temple, Yangpachen, the Big and Small Mosques, the Sela Temple, the Gandan Temple, the Zhuoma Valley, Namucuo (the Magic Lake), Samdain Kangsang Mountain

Hong Kong

Golden Bauhinia Square, Pseudo-Song-Dynasty Scenic Sights and Life Tourist Center, Mai Po Natural Area, Sai Kung, Kat Hing Wei Village, Victoria Peak, Repulse Bay, Lamma Island, the Stone Stairs of Dudley Street, Thousand Buddhas Monastery, Garden of Leopard and Tiger, Lantau Island, Ocean Park, Big Buddha, Queen's Road

Macao

Hotel Lisboa, the South Bay Man-made Lake, South Bay Park, Kun Iam Temple, the Gateway of Understanding, Chapel of St. Michael, Ruin of St. Paul Church

Taiwan Province

the Temple to Martyrs in Taizhong, Anvil Mountain, the Wenwu (magistrate and general) Temple, the Holiday Fish Market in Wuxi, the Magic Wood of Blessings, the Wuling Farm, the Fog Peak Garden of the Lin Family, the Garden of the Xiao Family, the Craters of the Snow Mountains, the Peaks of the Snow Mountains, the Yage Garden, the Ancient House of Yiyuan, the Blessing Tree in Yuemei, Zhaixing Mountain Manor

Appendix C

重要国际国内节日

- 一月：新年（一月一日）
 - 腊八节（农历腊月初八）
 - 成人节（日本，一月十五日）
- 二月：世界湿地日（二月二日）
 - 情人节（二月十四日）
 - 狂欢节（巴西，二月中、下旬）
 - 除夕（农历腊月三十）
 - 春节（农历正月初一）
 - 元宵节（农历正月十五）
- 三月：全国爱耳日（三月三日）
 - 国际妇女节（三月八日）
 - 植树节（三月十二日）
 - 国际警察日（三月十四日）
 - 国际消费日（三月十五日）
 - 圣帕特里克节（爱尔兰，三月十七日）
 - 世界森林日（三月二十一日）
 - 世界水日（三月二十二日）
 - 世界气象日（三月二十三日）
 - 世界防止结核病日（三月二十四日）
 - 枫糖节（加拿大，三至四月）
 - 复活节（春分月圆后第一个星期日）
- 四月：愚人节（四月一日）
 - 清明节（四月五日）

世界卫生日（四月七日）
宋干节（泰国新年，四月十三日）
食品节（新加坡，四月十七日）
世界地球日（四月二十二日）
国际秘书节（四月二十五日）

五月：国际劳动节（五月一日）
中国青年节（五月四日）
全国碘缺乏病日（五月五日）
男孩节（日本，五月五日）
世界红十字日（五月八日）
国际护士节（五月十二日）
把斋节（四月或五月）
开斋节（四月或五月，回历十月一日）
国际家庭日（五月十五日）
世界电信日（五月十七日）
国际博物馆日（五月十八日）
全国助残日（五月十九日）
全国学生营养日（五月二十六日）
国际生物多样性日（五月二十二日）
国际牛奶日（五月二十三日）
世界无烟日（五月三十一日）
端午节（农历五月初五）
母亲节（第二个星期日）
银行节假日（英国，五月三十一日）

六月：国际儿童节（六月一日）
世界环境日（六月五日）
全国爱眼日（六月六日）
全国文化遗产日（第二个星期六）
父亲节（第三个星期日）
仲夏节（北欧，六月）
防治荒漠化和干旱日（六月十七日）
国际奥林匹克日（六月二十三日）
全国土地日（六月二十五日）

国际反毒品日（六月二十六日）

七月：中国共产党建党日（七月一日）

香港回归日（七月一日）

七夕情人节（农历七月七日）

中国抗日战争纪念日（七月七日）

世界人口日（七月十一日）

古尔邦节（伊斯兰节，七月下旬）

八月：八一建军节（八月一日）

筷子节（日本，八月四日）

九月：劳动节（九月二日）

国际扫盲日（九月八日）

教师节（九月十日）

敬老节（日本，九月十五日）

国际臭氧层保护日（九月十六日）

国际和平日（九月十七日）

国际爱牙日（九月二十日）

中秋节（农历八月十五）

国际聋人节（九月二十二日）

世界旅游日（九月二十七日）

重阳节（农历九月九日）

十月：国庆节（十月一日）

国际音乐节（十月一日）

国际减轻自然灾害日（十月二日）

世界住房日（十月第一个星期一）

世界动物日（十月四日）

全国高血压日（十月八日）

世界视觉日（十月八日）

世界邮政日（十月九日）

世界精神卫生日（十月十日）

啤酒节（德国，十月十日）

国际盲人节（十月十五日）

世界粮食节（十月十六日）

世界消除贫困日（十月十七日）

世界传统医药日（十月二十二日）
联合国日（十月二十四日）
南瓜节（北美，十月三十一日）

十一月：万圣节（十一月一日）
中国记者日（十一月八日）
消防宣传日（十一月九日）
世界糖尿病日（十一月十四日）
国际大学生节（十一月十七日）
感恩节（十一月二十八日）

十二月：冬至节（农历十二月二十二日）
世界艾滋病日（十二月一日）
世界残疾人日（十二月三日）
世界足球日（十二月九日）
护士节（十二月十二日）
圣诞节（十二月二十五日）
节礼日（十二月二十六日）

Some Important International and Domestic Days

January: New Year's Day (January 1st)
The Eighth Day of the Twelfth Lunar Month
Adults Day (Japan, January 15th)

February: World Wetland Day (February 2nd)
St. Valentine's Day (February 14th)
Carnival (Brazil, in the middle or last ten days of February)
Eve of Spring Festival (the thirtieth of the twelfth lunar month)
Spring Festival (the 1st of the first lunar month)
Lantern Festival (the 15th of the first lunar month)

March: National Ear Day (March 3rd)
International Laboring Women's Day (March 8th)
Arbor Day (March 12th)
International Police Day (March 14th)
International Consumer Right Day (March 15th)

St. Patrick's Day (March 17th)
World Forest Day (March 21st)
World Day for Water (March 22nd)
World Meteorological Day (March 23rd)
World Tuberculosis Day (March 24th)
Maple Sugar Festival (Canada, March to April)
Easter (the first Sunday after the full moon succeeding Spring Equinox)

April: April Fool's Day

Tomb-Sweeping Festival (April 5th)
World Health Day (April 7th)
Songkran Festival Day (the New Year's Day of the Thailand, April 13th)
Food Festival (Singapore, April 17th)
World Earth Day (April 22nd)
International Secretary Day (April 25th)

May: International Labor Day (May 1st)

Chinese Youth Day (May 4th)
National Iodine Deficiency Prevention Day (May 5th)
Boys' Day (Japan, May 5th)
World Red Cross Day (May 8th)
International Nurses Day (May 5th)
Bamadan (April or May)
Lesser Bairam (the first of the October Islamic Month)
International Family Day (May 15th)
World Telecommunications Day (May 17th)
International Museums Day (May 18th)
National Day of Assisting the Disabled (May 19th)
Students Nutrition Day of China (May 26th)
International Biodiversity Day (May 22nd)
International Milk Day (May 23rd)
World Non-Tabacco Day (May 31st)
Dragon Boat Day (the fifth of the fifth lunar month)
Mother's Day (the second Sunday)
Bank Holiday (UK, May 31st)

June: International Children's Day (June 1st)

World Environment Day (June 5th)

National Eye Care Day (June 6th)

National Cultural Heritage Day (the second Saturday)

Father's Day (the third Sunday)

Mid-Summer Day (Northern Europe)

World Day to Combat Desertification and Drought (June 17th)

International Olympic Day (June 23rd)

National Land Day (June 25th)

International Day against Drug Abuse and Illicit Trafficking (June 26th)

July: Birthday of the Communist Party of China (July 1st)

Hong Kong Return's Day (July 1st)

Lover's Day (the seventh of the seventh lunar month)

Commemoration Day of the Chinese People's War against the Japanese Aggression (July 7th)

World Population Day (July 7th)

Corban (Islamic festival, the last 10 days of July)

August: Birthday of the Chinese People's Liberation Army (August 1st)

Chopsticks Day (Japan, August 4th)

September: Labor Day (September 2nd)

International Literacy Day (September 8th)

Teachers' Day (September 10th)

Old People's Day (Japan, September 15th)

International Day for the Preservation of the Ozone Layer (September 16th)

International Day of Peace (September 17th)

World Tooth Day (September 20th)

Mid-Autumn Festival (the 15th of the eighth lunar month)

International Day of the Deaf (September 22nd)

World Tourism Day (September 27th)

Double Ninth Day/ Mountain Scaling Day (the ninth of the ninth lunar month)

October: National Day (October 1st)

International Music Day (October 1st)

International Day for Natural Disaster Reduction (October 2nd)

World Habitat Day (the first Monday of October)
World Animal Day (October 4th)
National Day of Hypertension (October 8th)
World Vision Day (October 8th)
World Post Day (October 9th)
World Mental Health Day (October 10th)
Oktoberfest (Germany, October 10th)
International Day of the Blind (October 15th)
World Food Day (October 16th)
World Day for the Eradication of Poverty (October 22nd)
International Traditional Medicine Day (October 22nd)
United Nations Day (October 24th)
Pumpkin Day (North America, October 31st)

November: Halloween (November 1st)

Chinese Journalists' Day (November 8th)
Fire Prevention Day (November 9th)
World Diabetes Day (November 14th)
International College Students Day (November 17th)
Thanksgiving (November 28th)

December: Winter Solstice Festival (the 22nd of the twelfth lunar month)

World Aids Day (December 1st)
International Day of Disabled Persons (December 3rd)
World Football Day (December 9th)
Nurse Day (December 12th)
Christmas (December 25th)
Boxing Day (December 26th)

Appendix D

某省出境旅游组团合同 (示范文本)

甲方(团体或个人):

合同编号:

乙方(组团旅行社):

签订时间: 年 月 日

甲方自愿参加乙方组织的本次旅游。为明确双方的权利和义务,本着平等协商的原则,双方现就有关事宜达成如下协议:

一、说明

1. 本合同甲方应为依据法律、法规规定允许出境的团体或个人,乙方应为具有出境旅游经营资格的旅行社。
2. 双方签章确认的行程表、旅游发票、旅游报名表均为合同附件。
3. 本合同一式两份,双方各执一份,具有同等效力。
4. 本合同从签订之日起生效。

二、报名出团

1. 甲方报名参团时,应自备有效期半年以上的因私护照或通行证,并提供经常使用或能够保证及时联系的电话、手机或传真号码,否则乙方在需要通知却通知不到甲方时,乙方不承担由此产生的损失。
2. 甲方应当确保自身身体条件适合参加旅游团旅游,并有义务在签订本合同时将自身健康情况告知乙方。
3. 甲方应在报名时付清团费,乙方收取团费应出具发票。
4. 乙方应在出团前召开说明会,把行程表发给甲方,详细说明有关事项。甲方缺席责任自负。行程表应根据双方确认的行程而细化,列明旅游线路、时间、景点、交通工具安排、酒店名称及标准、用餐次数及标准、购物娱乐安排、领队和相关旅行社联系人及紧急联络方式等。

5. 旅游用汇按国家外汇管理规定进行兑换、使用及办理核销或退汇。

三、团费包括

1. 本次行程签证费用。
2. 行程表所列往返交通费、机场税（费）、游览交通费。
3. 行程表所列酒店或同级酒店的住宿费。
4. 行程表所列的餐费（不含酒水）。
5. 行程表所列非自费旅游项目第一门票。
6. 领队、导游服务。

四、团费不包括

1. 旅途中火车、轮船上餐费。
2. 个人旅游意外保险费和航空保险费。
3. 行程表所列自费项目及行程表以外活动项目所需的费用。
4. 卫生检疫费。
5. 出入境行李的海关税、搬运费、保管费和超重（件）行李托运费。
6. 酒店内的酒水、洗衣、通信等费用。
7. 小费等其他私人开支。
8. 其他未约定由乙方支付的费用。

五、退团和取消行程处理办法

1. 甲方退团或乙方取消行程应当及时通知对方，应承担由此产生的业务损失费（指乙方为甲方安排本次旅游已支出的费用，下同），并按以下标准支付违约金：

- (1) 出发前 14 天（以自然日计算，下同）以上，团费总额的 5%；
- (2) 出发前 13 至 8 天，团费总额的 10%；
- (3) 出发前 7 至 1 天，团费总额的 15%；
- (4) 出发当天，团费总额的 20%。

2. 更改出团日期，更改方应与对方协商，并承担由此产生的业务损失费，协商不成按退团或取消行程处理。

3. 双方对本条内容另有约定的，从约定。

六、有关责任问题

1. 乙方应为甲方提供符合保障人身、财物安全需要的服务，对可预知危及甲方人身、财物安全的项目和须注意的问题，应当事前向甲方做出真实说明和明确警示，并采取防止危害发生的措施。

2. 乙方应按国家规定投保旅行社责任保险。因旅行社责任造成甲方人身、财产损失时,按《旅行社投保旅行社责任保险规定》处理。此外,乙方应向甲方推荐购买相关的旅游者个人保险。

3. 乙方擅自将甲方转至其他旅行社合并组团的,甲方有权在出发前解除合同,由乙方承担业务损失费,并退回甲方已交团费,乙方按照团费的3%支付赔偿金;甲方在出发后才得知存在擅自合并组团情况的,除有权要求乙方承担相关的法律责任外,还有权要求乙方按照团费5%的标准支付违约金。

4. 甲方应遵守国家出入境管理、海关管理及相关国家、地区的法律、法规;尊重当地风土人情、民族习惯;不涉足黄、赌、毒场所,违者后果自负。

5. 甲方因违约、自身过错、自由活动期间的行为或自身疾病引起的人身、财产损失由其自行承担;因违反有关国家或地区法令而被惩罚、拘留、遣返或追究其他法律责任的,相关责任和费用由其自行承担;给乙方造成损失的,还应当承担赔偿责任。

6. 甲方在旅途中发生人身或财产损害意外事故时,按国家有关规定处理;因伤病不能继续旅行时,乙方应积极协助做出妥善安排,其所交团费扣除实际业务损失费后,剩余部分退回甲方,乙方不承担其医疗及其他费用。

7. 甲方在旅途中自行离团或不参加计划内的某项团队活动,视为自动放弃,所交费用不予退回。乙方增加任何旅游项目(包括增加景点、购物、娱乐项目等),应以不影响原计划行程为原则,并获得甲方书面同意。

8. 旅途中,甲方应妥善保管好个人财物,未委托乙方代管而损坏或丢失,乙方不承担责任。

9. 因申请旅游签证被拒签、被拒绝出入境、伤病等属于甲方个人客观原因导致不能按时成行或行程中断,造成的损失由甲方承担,乙方扣除实际损失费后将剩余团费退回甲方。

10. 因不可抗力原因导致本合同无法履行,乙方应当及时通知甲方,并采取适当措施防止损失的扩大。乙方可在已收团费中扣除业务损失费后退回甲方;造成团队行程更改、延误、滞留或提前结束时,甲乙双方可根据当时的情况协商解决,如发生费用增减,增加部分由甲方承担,减少部分退回甲方。

11. 旅途中如遇到不可抗力以外的意外情况,乙方与甲方协商后可对行程做出适当调整,增加的费用由乙方承担,如因调整造成服务档次降低或活动内容减少,乙方按《旅行社质量保证金赔偿试行标准》赔偿甲方损失。

12. 出境旅游过程中双方发生纠纷,应当本着平等的原则协商解决或在回国后通过法律途径解决,甲方不应以服务质量等问题为由,拒绝登机(车、船)、实施违反行程国家或地区法令的行为或采取其他拖延行程、扩大影响的措施强迫乙方接受其提出的要求。因此扩大的损失甲方自行承担。

七、旅游内容与标准

1. 甲方报名人数：_____人（_____大_____小，附名单），目的地国家（地区）：_____旅游线路：_____。
2. 乙方组团_____，或转_____旅行社出团。
3. 行程安排：交通工具、景点、酒店名称、餐饮及购物、娱乐等（见行程表，双方签章确认为准）。
4. 出发日期及时间_____，集合地点_____；结束日期及时间_____，解散地点_____。
5. 领队及导游服务（特殊约定除外）。
6. 团费_____元/人，小孩_____元/人（小孩费用由双方根据服务内容与标准商定），合计总额_____元。

八、争议的解决方式

1. 乙方的服务质量受旅游质量监督管理所监管，如因团队的服务质量问题造成甲方的合法权益受到损害，按照《旅行社质量保证金赔偿试行标准》赔偿，双方协商不成，可向旅游质量监督管理所投诉。
2. 本合同发生纠纷，经协商、调解不成的，可采取以下其中一种方式解决：①向_____仲裁委员会申请仲裁；②向_____法院起诉。

九、双方修改或补充条款：

甲方（签章）：

乙方（签章）：

联系电话：

联系电话：

地址：

地址：

某省旅游局编制 某省工商行政管理局监制
本合同示范文本自二〇〇六年三月十五日实施

Contract for Overseas Package Tour Groups

A Province

(A Sample Text)

Party A (institution or individual) :

No. of Contract :

Party B (tour-organizing travel agency) :

Agreement signed on :

Party A participates in this tour proprio motu, and to define both parties' rights and

obligations the parties involved reach the following agreement in the spirit of equality and through consultations :

I. Definitions

A. Party A shall be an institution or individual permitted by law and regulations for overseas tours, and Party B shall be a qualified travel agency authorized for organizing overseas tours.

B. The itinerary, tour invoices and tour application forms are attached to this agreement.

C. This contract is signed in duplicate, each held by one party, and both being authentic and binding on both parties.

D. This contract comes into effect on the date of its signature.

II. Application for Group Tour

A. When intending to apply for a group tour, the applicant of Party A shall have his/her passport for private affairs or travel certificate with a validity period of above half a year and provides his/her phone, mobile phone or fax numbers currently in use and warranty for timely contact, or Party B shall not be held responsible for any loss from failure in contacting Party A when such need arises.

B. Party A shall make sure that his/her health permits him/her for the tour and has the obligation to inform Party B of his/her health conditions.

C. Party A shall pay for the tour the moment applying for it, and Party B shall pass the invoice for the payment to Party A.

D. Party B shall hold a briefing prior to departure, at which Party B shall issue the itinerary to Party A, explaining the concerned matters in detail. Party A shall be held responsible for his/her default. The itinerary shall be detailed in accordance with the arrangement confirmed by both parties, listing unmistakably the itinerary, time, spots, vehicles, hotels, hotel stars, number of meals, meal standards, entertainment arrangement, group leaders, contact persons of the concerned travel agencies and ways for contact in emergency.

E. Foreign exchange for tour shall be converted, used, written off or reexchanged in accordance with the regulations of the State Administration for Foreign Exchange.

III. Fees

A. Visa fee for tour.

B. Transport fee to and from the destination, airport tax/fee, transportation fee to and

from the visit spots.

C. Accommodation fee for the hotels listed in the itinerary or the hotels of the same level.

D. Fees for meals listed in the itinerary (excluding alcoholic or soft drinks).

E. Fees for the first gate entrance tickets of non-self-paid tour items specified in the itinerary.

F. Fees for tour conducting and guiding services.

IV. Fees Excluding

A. Fees for meals on board of a train or ship.

B. Fees for accident insurance and aviation insurance.

C. Fees for items with expenses selfborne or items out of the listed ones in the itinerary.

D. Fees for quarantine inspections.

E. Fees for customs tax, portorage, custody charge, surcharge for overweight luggage.

F. Fees for the beverage, laundry and communication incurred in hotels.

G. Tips or other private miscellaneous expenses.

H. Other uncovered expenses agreed upon not to be paid by Party B.

V. Waiver Policy

A. Party A or Party B shall timely inform the other Party in case the former withdraws from the tour or the latter waives the itinerary, and the latter shall be responsible for the business loss incurred (in arranging for this tour, similarly hereinafter), and pay the penal sum described as follows:

a. 14 days or more before departure (calculated by dies naturalis, similarly hereinafter), 5% of the total sum for the group tour;

b. 8 to 13 days before departure, 10% of the total sum for the group tour;

c. 1 to 7 days before departure, 15% of the total sum for the group tour;

d. On the day of departure, 20% of the total sum for the group tour.

B. The alteration of departure date shall be done through consultations between the alteration launching party and the other party, and the launcher shall be responsible for the incurred business loss. In case of consultation failure, the matter shall be dealt with according to the terms of withdrawal or waiver of itinerary.

C. For items agreed upon by both parties elsewhere other than in this contract, the items shall be followed in accordance with the agreement.

VI. Related Obligations

A. Party B shall provide for Party A the services needed for the safety of Party A and his/her property and inform him/her with realistic explanations and clear warnings of the foreseeable items that may endanger Party A or his/her property or needs attention for taking preventive measures.

B. Party B shall buy the liability insurance for travel agency according to the state stipulations. In case of injury or damage to Party A's body or property, for which the travel agency is held responsible, it shall be dealt with in the light of the Regulations Concerning Travel Agency Liability Insurance Bought by Travel Agencies. In addition, Party B should recommend the related tourist private insurance to Party A.

C. In case Party B transfers without authorization Party A to other travel agencies to form a merged group, Party A is entitled to terminating before departure the contract with Party B and the latter shall bear the business loss on itself and return to Party A its submitted fees plus 3% of the total sum as the penal sum. In case Party A learns after departure the merged group without authorization, it is not only entitled to asking Party B to take the related legal responsibilities, but also entitled to asking Party B to pay 5% of the total submitted fees as the penal sum.

D. Party A shall abide by the state regulations on entry and exit, on customs administration and the related state laws and regulations, respect local customs and conventions, ethnic practices, and shall not get to places of pornography, gambling and drugs, and shall be held responsible for any breach thereof.

E. Party A shall bear any personal or property loss arising from his/her own breach of contract, fault, action in free activities of tour or disease, shall bear the liabilities and cost of custody, punishment, repatriation or pursuit of other legal responsibilities due to his/her breach of the laws or statutes of the country or region of tour destination, and in the event that causes loss to Party B, shall compensate Party B for the above-mentioned matters.

F. In the event of accidental personal or property damage to Party A, he/she shall be dealt with in accordance with the relevant state regulations. In case that Party A can not continue the tour due to illness or disease, Party B shall actively assist in making appropriate arrangements and refund to Party A the price of the missed part of the tour after deducting the actually incurred business loss, and Party B shall not bear the medical or other expenses of Party A.

G. Party A's withdrawal from the tour group without application or notification to Party B or failure to participate in certain group activities shall be deemed as voluntary

abandonment, the price shall not be refunded. Any additional tour items (including additional excursions, shopping or entertainment items) shall be implemented in the principle of not affecting the scheduled itinerary and with the written agreement of Party A.

H. In the course of tour, Party A shall take good care of his/her personal belongings, and Party B shall not be held responsible for any damage or loss of the property that is not entrusted to the care of Party B.

I. Party A shall bear the loss owing to failure to depart on time or termination of tour in the course due to such objective causes on Party A as tour visa rejection, entrance or exit rejection, injuries or disease, and Party B shall refund to Party A the price of the missed part of the tour after deducting the actually incurred business loss on its own part.

J. In the event that this contract can not be implemented due to force majeure, Party B shall notify Party A immediately and take appropriate measures to prevent the loss expansion. Party B shall refund to Party A the price of the missed party of the tour after deducting the actually incurred business loss. In the event of any alteration of the scheduled itinerary, delay, stranding or earlier-than-scheduled termination of the tour, both parties shall deal with the matter through consultation and according to the situation, and in the event of any addition or reduction of the incurred expenses, Party A shall bear the increased expenses and Party B shall refund to Party A the saved expenses.

K. In the situation of unexpected accidents other than force majeure, Party B may make appropriate readjustment to the tour itinerary after consulting with Party A, Party B shall bear the increased expenses thereof. If this causes lowering of service grades or reducing activity contents, Party B shall compensate Party A for the loss according to the Trial Compensation Standards of Travel Agency Quality Guarantee Fund.

L. In the event of disputes between the two parties in the course of the tour, they shall be resolved through consultation in the spirit of mutual equality or through legal procedures after returning to the country. Party A shall not refuse to board the planes (vehicles or ships) on the excuse of dissatisfied service quality, etc., or take measures for expanded influence to force Party B to accept his/her demands, the loss from which shall be borne by Party A.

VII. Tour Contents and Standards

A. Applicants of Party A: _____ persons (_____ adults _____ children, with a name list attached), destination country (region): _____, tour route: _____.

B. Organized by Party B _____, or entrusted to _____ Travel Agency.

C. Itinerary arrangements: transportation, tour spots, names of hotels, meals,

shopping, entertainment, etc. (as seen in the itinerary authorized by the signatures of both parties).

D. Time and date of departure _____, the assembly place _____, time and date of tour termination, the place for group dismissal _____.

E. Tour leader and guide service (except the items otherwise agreed on elsewhere);

F. Tour price _____ yuan/person, for children _____ yuan/person (price for children shall be agreed on in the light of service contents and standards), totaled _____ yuan.

VIII. Settlement of Disputes

A. The tour service quality of Party B shall be supervised by the Supervision and Administration Office of Tour Quality. In case that the legitimate rights and interests of Party A are infringed due to the service quality, Party B shall compensate Party A in accordance with the Trial Compensation Standards of Travel Agency Quality Guarantee Fund, and if the two parties can not resolve the dispute through negotiation, Party A may lodge complaints to the Supervision and Administration Office of Tour Quality.

B. In case that disputes are covered by this contract but unresolved through consultation or mediation, the parties may resolve the disputes in ways as follows: a) appeal to the arbitration commission for arbitration; b) appeal to _____ court.

IX. Revisions or Supplements:

Signature of Party A:

Signature of Party B:

Contact Phone:

Contact Phone:

Address:

Address:

Drafted by _____ Provincial Bureau of Tourism

Supervised by _____ Provincial Administration of Industry and Commerce

This exemplary text comes into effect as from March 15, 2006.

Appendix E

海外旅游合同标准模板

[此合同有一天的核对批准时间，由甲方持此合同于_____年____月____日核对批准。]

合同签约方：

(顾客方) _____

(以下称为“甲方”)

(旅行社方) _____

(以下称为“乙方”)

条款 1：(海外旅游定义)

“海外旅游”术语在本合同中指在_____领土之外的国家或地区的旅游。本合同中的条款根据实际修正，应用于前往_____旅行的旅行者。

条款 2：(应用范围和级别)

本次旅游参与方的权利和义务根据本合同条款执行；本合同未尽事宜根据_____国法律处理。补充条款和广告将是本合同中的一部分。

条款 3：(旅游团名称及计划旅游地点)

本旅游团名称： _____

(1) 旅游地 (国家、城市或旅游景点)： _____

(2) 旅程表 (描述旅游往返各程的抵达地、日期、交通工具、住宿、就餐、出游和其他服务)： _____

广告、促销文件、安排和旅程表，或介绍会可代替以上款项中的细节记录，被视为

形成此合同的部分。但是如果明确声明仅供参考，或一家外国旅行社提供的内容具有广泛权威性，则以上记录无效。

条款 4: (集合和出发时间地点)

甲方将在_____年____月____日____时____分在_____地准时加入旅游团出发。如果甲方由于在规定的时间内无法到达指定地点，无法与旅游团出发，无法在下一个地点加入旅游团，即视为甲方取消此合同，乙方有权根据本合同第 27 条要求赔偿。

条款 5: (本次旅游的价格)

甲方根据以下条款支付费用。

(1) 签协议时，甲方支付_____元。

(2) 出发前三天或行前介绍会时支付剩余款项。除双方另有协议和本合同第 36 条的协议及其他条款规定的以外，乙方不得以任何理由向甲方要求额外的旅游费用。

条款 6: (不付旅游团费的后果)

如果甲方为其应负责的事项不付团费，乙方有权取消合同，不退还甲方已付定金。如果乙方因此承受其他损失，可以对此提出赔偿。

条款 7: (旅游团顾客合作义务)

如果为了旅游成功，要求甲方采取一些行动，甲方不采取这样的行动，乙方应提出一个合适的时间限制，并就此通知甲方。如果甲方在规定的时间内，没有采取要求的行动，乙方可以终止合同，并可就由于终止引起的任何损失索赔。

如果乙方在旅游开始后，根据以上条款终止合同，甲方可以在承诺返回后支付乙方费用的前提下要求乙方临时支付返回旅游出发点的路费。返回后，甲方应支付乙方支付的返回路费及按照年利率_____支付相应的利息。

条款 8: (交通费用的增减)

旅游合同实施后，为顾客舒适使用交通工具产生的票价费用超过或减少 10%，应在合同完成前公开宣布，甲方将补足或乙方将适当退还价差。

条款 9: (旅游价格包含的内容)

除非双方另有规定，协议条款 5 中规定甲方应付的旅游价格中应包括以下内容。

(1) 旅行社海外旅游手续费：必需的海外旅游手续费、签证费和乙方代表甲方付出的相应服务的管理费。

(2) 交通费：此次旅游需要的各种交通费用。

(3) 餐饮费：旅途中乙方应要求安排的所有餐饮费。

(4) 住宿费: 旅行中包括的所有住宿费用; 如果甲方要求住单间, 乙方同意做此安排, 甲方应补齐差价。

(5) 游览费: 旅行期间所有的游览费, 包括交通、导游和门票费。

(6) 驳渡费: 旅游期间机场、码头、车站等和旅馆间的驳运。

(7) 行李费: 机场、码头、车站等和旅馆间的行李搬运费等, 包括搬运工的小费; 行李重量按照空运规定处理。

(8) 税费: 所有机场服务税、旅游团住宿和餐税。

(9) 服务费: 乙方为甲方安排的旅游团领队和其他服务人员的费用。

条款 10: (旅游价格不包括的项目)

条款 5 下不包括以下项目。

(1) 此合同行程中不包括的任何费用。

(2) 甲方个人的花费: 如超重行李费、酒水费、干洗费、电话费、电报费、个人交通费、旅游行程以外的为陪同购物的费用、自由活动费用、个人伤病医疗费用、为个人提供服务自愿付出的感谢费(如旅店客房个人服务)或为寻找和归还丢失物品付出的报酬和感谢费用。

(3) 旅游行程不包括在内的相关的签证、航班和其他项目费用。

(4) 自愿付给导游、司机或领队的感谢费。

(5) 保险费: 甲方自己购买的旅行保险。

(6) 条款 9 中没有列出的其他花费。

关于以上第(2)项和第(4)项中提到的自愿感谢费, 乙方在出发前, 将就各旅游到达地的给予和接受感谢费的情况及合适的数量给予解释。

条款 11: (强制保险)

乙方应根据旅游管理机关的规定, 安排责任保险和合同旅行保险。

当乙方没有根据上一段中提出的要求购买保险, 发生事故时或无法执行合同时, 乙方应向甲方支付由旅游管理机关规定的最小保险额应付款三倍的金额。

条款 12: (组团最小人数)

为组成本旅游团, 要求至少有_____人签订合同参加组团。如果报名参团的人数达不到以上规定的最小数额, 乙方应在原定的出发前至少 7 天通知甲方取消合同, 如果乙方没有这样通知甲方, 乙方应为此引起的后果赔偿甲方。根据以上条款取消合同后, 乙方可在以下项列举的替代行动中选出一项, 或者退还旅游费或根据以下第(2)项将其转为进入一个新合同的付款。

(1) 除了乙方扣除代表甲方已经支付的签证或其他管理费用, 乙方应退还甲方已经

支付的所有费用。

(2) 取消合同时, 根据第 1 段规定全部退还甲方已支付的费用, 或根据新旅游合同部分, 经甲方同意转入另一合同, 退还甲方已付的部分费用。

条款 13: (签证申请和购票)

一旦决定组团, 乙方应代表甲方对签证申请负责, 做必需的航班和旅店预订。乙方应在预定的出发日七日前或在行前会议上向甲方报告涉及甲方护照、签证、票务、座位、旅店的事宜及其他相关事宜, 书面确定行程。乙方没有尽到以上相关责任时, 甲方可拒绝参团, 取消合同, 乙方应立即返还甲方支付的所有款项。预定行程出发日前, 乙方应尽力向甲方提供旅游团可能需要了解的合同行程涉及的各城市、国家和景点的海关、地理及其他情况。

条款 14: (旅行社失责造成的未成行)

由于任何乙方原因造成甲方不能参加团队活动, 乙方了解情况后, 应立即通知甲方。如果乙方没有按照规定通知甲方, 乙方应按照团游全费赔偿未履行应清算的损失。如果乙方按照规定通知了甲方, 则乙方应按照通知日期和预定的出发日间的间隔向甲方做出清算赔偿。其计算方法如下。

- (1) 出发前 31 天以上, 赔偿团费的 10%。
- (2) 出发前 21 天到 30 天, 赔偿团费的 20%。
- (3) 出发前 2 天到 20 天, 赔偿团费的 30%。
- (4) 出发前 1 天, 赔偿团费的 50%。
- (5) 出发当天或出发后, 赔偿团费的 100%。

如果甲方能够证明他的损失超过了按照以上各项计算的损失, 他可以根据他的实际损失索赔。

如果乙方由于不可抗拒的原因不能组团, 乙方在了解情况后, 应立即通知甲方, 解释原因。乙方没有按照规定通知甲方时, 乙方应负责向甲方做出相应的损失赔偿。

条款 16: (程序失误造成的团游失败)

在团游开始后, 甲方由于乙方应负责签证、票务或其他问题无法完成部分行程, 乙方应付费为甲方安排到下一旅行目的地, 与其他旅行团成员会合; 由于某些情况, 所有团员无法成行时, 乙方应安排替代的相应活动; 如果旅行已经没有下一目的地, 乙方应安排甲方返回本国。

在以上描述的情况下, 若乙方无法做出替代旅行活动, 乙方应退还甲方没有成行部分的费用, 应同时作为清算赔偿, 做等价赔付。

在由于乙方应负责任的情况下, 甲方被旅游地政府拘捕、扣留或受到法律限制自

由,乙方应每天赔付甲方_____;如果这种情况延续,乙方应代表甲方迅速安排甲方返回本国,所有必需费用应有乙方承担。

条款 17:(旅游团领队)

乙方应指定一名合适的有执业执照的旅游领队率领团队。甲方可以因乙方行为违背以上条款遭受损失或损害向乙方提出索赔。旅游团领队应在海外旅游中带领团队,代表甲方处理出入境手续,处理关于交通、就餐、住宿、出游等完成旅游所需的事宜,从海外旅游出发直到返回途中全程陪伴旅游团。

条款 18:(保存和返还护照)

乙方代表甲方办理签证申请和旅游手续时,应妥善保管甲方护照、印章、身份证件或其他甲方因旅游托付给乙方的此类物品,在遗失或损坏情况下,乙方应做补救,应赔偿甲方由此引起的任何损害或损失。在旅行期间,甲方应自行保管自己的旅行证件,在处理海关、入境或其他手续时,交由乙方保管。当乙方根据以上款项规定保管旅行证件时,乙方及其雇员应妥善保管这些证件,但甲方可以在任何时间要求归还其证件,乙方及其雇员不得拒绝归还。

条款 19:(旅游团雇主变更)

甲方在出团前_____天可能将本合同中的权利和义务分配给第三方,乙方因充足适当理由可以拒绝这种转配。在以上款项规定的情况下,甲方不可以要求乙方退还减少的成本,而签给的第三方应对由此引起的成本增加负责,甲方应在接到乙方通知_____天前,协调做出安排,由第三方到乙方经营地点办理必需的接受合同手续。自第三方和甲方完成合同委派手续时开始,第三方将接管此合同中所有的权利和义务。

条款 20:(变更旅行社)

出发前,未经甲方同意,乙方不得将此合同转包给另一旅行社,否则甲方可以撤销合同,要求赔偿引起的损失。旅行开始后,如果甲方发现或被告知此合同转给了另一旅行社,作为清算赔偿,乙方应赔偿甲方全部团费的5%,甲方可以为任何由此引起的损失要求赔偿。

条款 21:(海外旅行社责任追究)

乙方委托一家海外旅行社安排旅游活动,由于此海外旅行社违反合同或其他违法行为使甲方受到损失,乙方应视其为自己违约或违法,承担同样的责任。但是,由于甲方自己指定或旅游地的特殊情况,乙方无法挑选胜任的海外旅行社时,不适用以上规定。

条款 22:(索赔代位清偿)

乙方赔偿甲方损失或损害后,甲方应授权乙方向第三方为损失或损害索赔,应向乙

方提供索赔所需要的相关文件或证据。

条款 23: (旅行内容兑现和例外)

涉及就餐、住宿、交通、行程、景点、出游和其他项目应根据本合同规定的质量和内容办理,除非乙方同意甲方提出的要求,甲方不可以对此要求任何更改,甲方应对由此产生的额外增加成本付费。除本合同第 28 条或第 31 条描述事宜发生外,乙方不可因任何原因变更此合同内容。如果乙方没有安排提供就餐、住宿、交通、出游、或合同规定的其他任何事宜,甲方可按照合同违约清算损害额两倍向乙方索赔。

条款 24: (旅行社失误造成的游客困在海外)

由于乙方责任原因,甲方被困海外,乙方应负责支付甲方被困期间所有就餐、住宿和发生的其他必需花销。乙方也应根据既定行程表尽快安排旅游活动或安排甲方返家,乙方应赔偿甲方根据日均全部团费乘以被困天数计算的清算损害金额。

条款 25: (行程延误损失赔偿)

由于乙方应负责的原因造成的行程延误,乙方应负责甲方由于延误造成的就餐、住宿和其他必须花费的花销。乙方应赔偿甲方根据日均全部团费乘以延误天数计算的清算损害金额。但是延误总天数不可超过旅游总天数,延误不到一整天,但超过 5 小时以上,按一天计算。

条款 26: (恶意放弃海外旅游)

如果旅游活动开始后,乙方背信弃义、随意或出现重大过失,将甲方扔或困在海外,乙方应负责按照旅游合同规定的同样等级支付甲方在被抛下或受困期间就餐、住宿和返程的花费,应按照违约整个团费清算损害金额五倍赔偿甲方。

条款 27: (出发前随意撤销合同)

旅游活动开始前,甲方可通知乙方撤销合同,在此情况下,甲方应赔偿乙方代表自己办理护照或身份证件发生的费用,同时应按照以下规定赔偿。

- (1) 旅游活动开始前 31 天或以上,赔偿全部团费的 10%。
- (2) 旅游活动开始前 21 天到 30 天,赔偿全部团费的 20%。
- (3) 旅游活动开始前 2 天到 20 天,赔偿全部团费的 30%。
- (4) 旅游活动开始前 1 天,赔偿全部团费的 50%。
- (5) 旅游活动开始当天或开始后通知乙方或不通知乙方不参加,赔偿全部团费的 100%。

按照前面款项中的规定,赔偿计算前,应减去签证费用。如果乙方能证明其损失超过按照前面款项计算的损失,他可以根据相当于自己实际损失索赔。

条款 28: (出发前因法律原因撤销合同)

由于不可抗拒原因或任何一方都不负责的原因,无法全部或部分履行合同,可以全部或部分取消合同,任何一方不必为由此产生的损失负责。乙方应将扣除代表甲方在履行合同时办理手续必需的花费后的剩余退还甲方。但是各方在了解无法履行旅游活动的信息后,应立即通知另一方,解释其原因,应负责赔偿由于没有通知对方引起的任何损失。为保证此旅游合同涉及的安全和利益,根据以上段落规定撤销合同中的部分内容,乙方应做出有利于旅游的必要安排。但是如果甲方对安排不同意,可以不执行,应支付由此产生的任何必要花销。

条款 28-1 (由于客观风险出发前撤销合同)

在出发前,由于真实的、认识到的计划旅游目的地对旅行者生命、肢体、健康或财产的风险,根据以上条款,可以撤销此合同。但是,为此撤销合同一方应对另一方做百分之_____的团费赔偿(规定的金额不可超过5%)。

条款 29 (旅游开始后旅行者随意终止合同)

旅游活动开始后,如果甲方离团,退出旅游活动,不得向乙方提出退费。但是,如果乙方由于甲方退出旅游活动能够节余或不需花销,乙方应将节余退给甲方。在旅行活动开始后,如果甲方不能按时参加安排的旅游活动,或不能准时登机、乘车、登船或其他交通工具,他应被视为已自动放弃他的权利,不得要求乙方任何退费或赔偿。

条款 30: (合同终结后返程安排)

旅游活动开始后,如果甲方在活动完成前离团或退出旅游活动,或不符合乙方为完成旅游活动要求的行为,终止合同,甲方在同意返回后返还乙方所付费用的条件下,可以要求乙方暂时付费将其送回旅游出发地。返回后,甲方应立即返还返程交通费和按照年利率_____的返还费的利息。如果乙方因以上款项描述的后果受到损失,乙方可以向甲方索赔。

条款 31: (旅游期间行程、就餐、住宿或出游项目的改变)

如果旅游期间由于不可抗拒力或乙方不应负的责任,无法完成安排的行程、就餐、住宿、游览等,为了保护旅游团的安全和利益,乙方可以改变行程游览项目或替换就餐、住宿或行程,如果这样做超过原来的成本,不可以向甲方要求差价。但是,如果改变导致节约成本,乙方应将差价退还甲方。如果甲方不同意改变上面款项中描述的行程,他可以终止合同,在甲方将返还乙方为此付出的费用的条件下,要求乙方暂时支付将他送回旅行出发地的费用。返回后,甲方应立即返还所有返回交通费用及按照年利率_____的返回费用的利息。

条款 32: (海外购物)

如果因为游客购物方便,乙方安排甲方购买礼物或纪念品,这类安排应事先录入成为本合同第三条旅游行程的一部分,如果任何所购买的商品质量和价格不符或有缺陷,甲方可以要求乙方帮助在拿到甲方所购以上商品发票后一个月内处理该事宜。乙方不得以任何理由或名义要求甲方在旅游途中和返回途中代表自己携带任何商品。

条款 33: (追究责任和援助)

在旅行途中,甲方在乘飞机、轮船、火车、地铁、缆车或其他任何公共交通工具时,非因乙方责任受到损害和损失,交通服务经营者应对甲方损害和损失负责。但是,乙方应尽管理者的最大关注,协助甲方处理事宜。

条款 34: (协助责任)

旅行中甲方遭受人身财产损失,乙方应提供所有必需的帮助处理事宜。以上损失事宜不因乙方责任引起时,涉及的所有花费应有甲方承担。但是乙方应尽管理者的最大关注,协助甲方处理事宜。

条款 35: (诚信原则)

双方应根据诚信原则履行合同。当乙方转包给另一旅行社,根据旅行社管理条款代表自己拉业务,该旅行社不得以未直接接受甲方付费或没有直接接受甲方参加旅游,或没有在这个合同上实际签名为由,为自己争辩免责。

条款 36: (协议其他项目)

双方同意遵守以下条款。

(1) 甲方同意/不同意 乙方将自己的名字提供给同团其他团员。

(2) 如果以上款项中的条款构成本合同任何其他条款的变化,除非经_____旅游局批准,除非甲方青睐,否则无效,

合同各方:

甲方:

地址:

身份证号:

电话或传真:

乙方: (公司名称):

注册号:

负责人:

地址:

电话或传真:

旅行社反签乙方副签:

(如果本合同是一个自己安排的由可靠的 A 级旅行社和旅行者签订的旅游产品, 本合同中不需要填写以下项目。)

(公司名称):

注册号:

负责人:

地址:

电话或传真:

签字日期_____年_____月_____日

(如果没有记录, 抵押金支付日被认为是签字日期)

签字地点: _____

(如果没有记录, 甲方居住地被认为是签字地点)

Template of Standardized Contract for Overseas Tour

[This contract has a checking and approval period of one day, and is taken by Party A for checking and approval on _____ (day) _____ (month) _____ (year).]

Contracting Parties:

(Name of customer) _____

(hereafter referred to as "Party A")

(Name of travel agency) _____

(hereafter referred to as "Party B")

Clause 1: (Definition of Overseas Travel)

The term "overseas travel" as referred to in this contract means travel to a country or territory outside the national borders of _____. The provisions of this travel contract shall apply mutatis mutandis to travelers to _____.

Clause 2: (Scope and Order of Application)

The rights and obligations of the parties in respect of this tour shall be governed as set out in the terms of this contract; matters not stipulated in this contract shall be governed by the laws of the _____. Annexes and advertisements shall constitute integral parts of this contract.

Clause 3: (Name of Tour Group and Scheduled Place of Tour)

The Name of this Tour Group is _____.

(1) Place of tour (country, city or tourist spot): _____

(2) Itinerary (Description of terminal points, dates, means of transport, accommodation, meals, excursions, and other accompanying services for outward and return legs of tour):

An advertisement, promotional document, schedule and itinerary, or explanatory meeting may replace the recording of details in the previous paragraph and shall be deemed to form an integral part of this contract. But if it is clearly stated that it is provided solely for reference or that the content provided by a foreign travel agency has prevailing authority, its recording shall be null and void.

Clause 4: (Time and Place of Meeting and Departure)

Party A shall join up with the tour group punctually at _____ (time) on _____ (day) _____ (month) _____ (year) at _____ (location) for departure. If Party A is unable to depart with the tour group as a consequence of Party A failing to arrive on time at the stipulated meeting place, and is unable to join the tour at a later point, Party A shall be deemed as having cancelled this contract, and Party B may exercise the right to claim compensation for loss in accordance with Clause 27 herein.

Clause 5: (The Price of the Tour)

Party A shall make payment in accordance with the following terms and conditions:

(1) At the time of signing this contract, Party A shall pay the sum of _____ dollars _____.

(2) The balance of the price shall be paid in full three days before the scheduled departure or at the time of the pre-tour briefing. Except as otherwise agreed between the two parties and recorded under "Other Items of Agreement" in Clause 36 of this contract, Party B may not for any reason demand the payment of additional tour expenses from Party A.

Clause 6: (Effect of Failure to Pay for the Tour)

If Party A, for reason for which he can be held responsible, fails to pay for the tour, Party B may cancel the contract and keep the deposit already paid by Party A. If Party B suffers other consequential loss, he may also claim compensation therefor.

Clause 7: (Tour Customer's Obligation to Cooperate)

If some action by Party A is required in order for the tour to be fulfilled and Party A fails to take such action, Party B may set an appropriate time limit and inform Party A thereof. If Party A fails to take the requisite action within the time limit, Party B may terminate the contract and may claim compensation for any loss resulting from the termination.

In the event that Party B terminates the contract in accordance with the provisions of the preceding paragraph after the commencement of the tour, Party A may request Party B to temporarily defray the cost of transporting Party A back to the tour departure point on the understanding that Party A will subsequently reimburse Party B therefor. After his return, Party A shall reimburse Party B for all such repatriation transport cost together with the payment of interest thereon at the rate of _____ percent per annum.

Clause 8: (Increase or Reduction of Transportation Price)

In the event that, after the travel contract has been entered into, the ticket price or fare for using any of the modes of transportation for conveying the customer as specified therein is adjusted upward or downward by more than ten percent above or below the ticket price or fare that was publicly announced prior to the concluding of the contract, Party A shall make up or Party B shall refund the difference in price as appropriate.

Clause 9: (Items Included in the Tour Price)

Unless the parties stipulate otherwise, the tour price to be paid by Party A under Clause 5 of this agreement shall cover the following items:

(1) Charge for agency handling of outbound procedures: Fee for handling requisite outbound procedures and visa fee and other regulatory fees for provision of related services by Party B acting on behalf of Party A.

(2) Transportation charge: Charge for all forms of transportation required by the tour.

(3) Charge for meals and beverages: Charge for all meals and beverages required to be arranged by Party B during the tour.

(4) Accommodation charge: Charge for all lodging and hotel accommodation included in the tour; and if Party A requires single room occupancy and Party B agrees to arrange the same, Party A shall make up the difference in price.

(5) Excursion charge: Charge for all excursions included in the tour, including charges for transportation, guides, and admission tickets.

(6) Transfer charge: Charge for all transfers between airport, port, station, etc. and hotel during the tour.

(7) Luggage charge: Charge for all transfers of group luggage between airport, port, station, etc. and hotel, including payment of tips to personnel transferring group luggage; the weight of luggage shall be dealt with in accordance with air carrier regulations.

(8) Taxes: All airport service taxes and group accommodation and meal taxes.

(9) Service charges: Remuneration for the tour leader and other service personnel arranged by Party B for Party A.

Clause 10: (Items not Included in the Tour Price)

The tour price under Clause 5 shall not include the following items:

(1) Any charges not within the listed itinerary of this tour contract.

(2) Personal expenses of Party A: Such as excess baggage charges, drinks and alcohol, laundry, telephone calls, telegrams, private transport costs, remuneration for escorted shopping outside the tour itinerary, free activity expenses, medical treatment expenses for personal injury or illness, and gratuities voluntarily given for the provision of personal services (such as to hotel guestroom service personnel) or charges and rewards for the finding and return of lost items.

(3) Payments related to visas, flights, and other items not within the tour itinerary.

(4) Gratuities voluntarily given to tour guides, drivers, or the tour leader.

(5) Insurance premiums: Payment for travel insurance taken out by Party A himself.

(6) Other expenses not listed under Clause 9 herein.

In regard to the voluntary giving of gratuities referred to in sub-paragraphs 2 and 4 of the preceding paragraph, Party B shall prior to departure explain the situation in each tour destination concerning the giving and receiving of gratuities and the approximate amount thereof.

Clause 11: (Compulsory Insurance)

Party B shall arrange liability insurance and contract performance insurance as stipulated by the competent administrative authority. In the event that Party B has failed to take out insurance as specified in the preceding paragraph when a tour accident occurs or the contract can not be performed, Party B shall be liable to pay Party A three times the amount payable under the minimum insurance coverage stipulated by the competent administrative authority.

Clause 12: (Minimum Number of Persons to Form a Tour Group)

The contracted participation of at least _____ persons is required as a precondition for the formation of this tour group. If the number of persons signing up for the tour does not reach the minimum as specified hereinbefore, Party B shall inform Party A of the cancellation of this contract at least seven days prior to the scheduled date of departure, and if Party B fails to inform Party A, Party B shall compensate Party A for loss suffered as a consequence thereof.

After canceling the contract in accordance with the provisions of the preceding paragraph, Party B may take one of the alternative courses of action as set out in the following sub-paragraphs, either refunding the tour price or transferring it to payment for a new tour contract entered into in accordance with sub-paragraph 2.

(1) Refunding the whole amount of all payments already made by Party A, save that Party B may deduct therefrom visa or other regulatory fees already disbursed on behalf of Party A.

(2) Obtaining agreement from Party A to enter into another tour contract, and transferring the whole of the money repayable to Party A upon cancellation of the contract in accordance with paragraph 1 as payment in whole or in part under the new tour contract.

Clause 13: (Visa Application and Passenger Ticket Purchase)

Once it is determined that the tour group can be formed, Party B shall be responsible for applying for visas required for the tour on behalf of Party A, and making the requisite flight and hotel reservations. Party B shall, seven days prior to the scheduled departure date or at the pre-departure orientation meeting, report to Party A concerning Party A's passport, visa(s), passenger tickets, seats, hotels, and other necessary matters, and confirm the tour itinerary in writing. In the event that Party B fails to fulfill any of the aforementioned obligations, Party A may decline to participate in the tour and cancel the contract, and Party B shall promptly refund all payments made by Party A.

Prior to the scheduled departure date, Party B shall do his utmost to provide information for Party A's reference concerning the customs, geographic situation, and other pertinent matters that members of the tour group may need to be aware of in respect of each city, country and tourist spot listed in the tour itinerary under this contract.

Clause 14: (Impossibility of Performance due to Fault of Travel Agency)

If, for any reason for which Party B can be held liable, it becomes impossible for Party

A to engage in the tour activity, Party B shall, immediately upon becoming aware of the situation, promptly notify Party A thereof and of the reasons therefor. Where Party B neglects to inform Party A as so stipulated, Party B shall be liable to compensate Party A with liquidated damages for breach of contract computed as the whole price of the tour. Where Party B informs Party A as so stipulated, the compensation that Party B is liable to pay to Party A as liquidated damages for breach of contract shall depend upon the length of time between the notification thereof to Party A and the scheduled date of departure, which shall be computed as follows:

(1) Notification 31 or more days prior to departure: 10 percent of the price of the tour as compensation.

(2) Notification between 21 days and 30 days prior to departure: 20 percent of the price of the tour as compensation.

(3) Notification between 2 days and 20 days prior to departure: 30 percent of the price of the tour as compensation.

(4) Notification 1 day prior to departure: 50 percent of the price of the tour as compensation.

(5) Notification on or after the day of departure: 100 percent of the price of the tour as compensation.

If Party A can prove that his loss exceeded the amounts as computed according to each sub-section of the preceding paragraph, he may claim compensation equivalent to his actual loss.

If the tour cannot be conducted owing to force majeure or reason for which Party B can not be held liable, Party B shall, immediately upon becoming aware of the situation, promptly notify Party A thereof and explain the reason therefor. Where Party B neglects to inform Party A as so stipulated, Party B shall be liable to compensate Party A for any consequent loss.

Clause 16: (Impossibility of Completing the Tour Due to Procedural Flaw)

In the event that, after the commencement of the tour, Party A is prevented from completing a part of the tour owing to a visa, ticket or other problem for which Party B can be held responsible, Party B shall at its own expense make arrangements for Party A to reach the next tour destination and rejoin the other members of the tour group; when the circumstance making it impossible to complete the tour applies to all the members of the tour group, Party B shall make arrangements for an equivalent tour activity to replace it; and if

there is no next destination in the tour, Party B shall arrange for Party A to return to this country.

Where, in the situation described in the preceding paragraph, Party B fails to arrange an alternative tour activity, Party B shall refund to Party A the price of the missed part of the tour, and shall also pay Party A an equal amount in liquidated damages as compensation.

In the event that, owing to reason for which Party B can be held responsible, Party A is arrested, detained, or placed under legal restraint by the government of the locality in which the tour is being conducted, Party B shall pay Party A liquidated damages of _____ per day as compensation for each day that such situation persists, and shall be responsible for acting swiftly on Party A's behalf and making arrangements for Party A to return to this country, and all necessary related costs shall be borne by Party B.

Clause 17: (Tour Leader)

Party B shall assign a duly certified tour leader to lead the tour.

Party A may claim compensation from Party B for any loss or harm suffered as a consequence of Party B acting in breach of the preceding provision.

The tour leader shall conduct Party A on the overseas tour, and shall act on Party A's behalf in handling all entry and exit procedures, dealing with matters related to transportation, meals, accommodation, excursions, etc., as required for the completion of the tour, and accompanying the tour group throughout the whole duration of the tour from the beginning of the outward journey to the end of the return journey.

Clause 18: (Safekeeping and Return of Passport)

When Party B undertakes visa application or other travel procedures on behalf of Party A, it shall take good and proper care of Party A's passport and any seal, identification document, or other such item entrusted to it by Party A for such purpose, and in the event that it loses or damages the same, shall act to rectify the situation and shall compensate Party A for any consequential harm or loss.

During the tour, Party A shall keep custody of his own travel documentation, but in case of need for handling customs, immigration or other procedures, or with the agreement of Party B, Party A may entrust the same to the custody of Party B.

When Party B takes custody of travel documents as provided for in the preceding paragraph, it and its employees shall exercise good and proper care in the keeping thereof, but Party A may at any time request the return of the same, and Party B and its employees may not refuse to do so.

Clause 19: (Change of Tour Customer)

Party A may up to _____ days prior to the scheduled departure date assign his rights and obligations under this contract to a third party, but Party B may for good and proper reasons refuse to accept such assignment.

Under the circumstances as set out in the preceding paragraph, Party A may not request Party B to refund any consequential reduction of cost, whereas the third party to whom this contract is assigned shall be liable for the payment of any consequential increase of cost, and Party A shall within _____ days of receiving notification from Party B coordinate arrangements for the third party to go to Party B's place of business to conduct the requisite contract acceptance procedures.

As of the completion of the contract assignment procedure between the third party and Party A, the third party shall take over all the rights and obligations under this contract.

Clause 20: (Change of Travel Agency)

Prior to departure and without the written consent of Party A, Party B may not assign this contract to another travel agency, otherwise Party A may cancel the contract and may claim compensation for any consequential loss.

If, after the tour has commenced, Party A discovers or is informed that this contract has been assigned to another travel agency, Party B shall pay Party A compensation of five percent of the whole tour price as liquidated damages, and Party A may claim compensation for any consequential loss.

Clause 21: (Imputation of Liability for Overseas Travel Agency)

When Party B commissions an overseas travel agency to arrange a tour activity and Party A suffers loss or harm as the result of a breach of this contract or other unlawful action by the overseas travel agency, Party B shall bear the same liability as if the breach of contract or unlawful action were its own. However, this shall not apply in cases where Party B was unable to select the agency so commissioned due to Party A's own designation or the special circumstances of the tour location.

Clause 22: (Subrogation of Compensation Claim)

After Party B has compensated Party A for loss or injury, Party A shall assign to Party B his right to claim compensation against a third party for such loss or injury, and shall furnish Party B with any relevant documents or evidence needed for pursuing such a claim.

Clause 23: (Tour Content Realization and Exceptions)

Arrangements concerning meals, accommodation, transportation, tour itinerary, tourist spots, excursions, and other items shall be made in accordance with the quality and content thereof as specified in this contract, and Party A may not demand any change thereto, except insofar as Party B has agreed to a change requested by Party A, in which case Party A shall be liable to defray any additional cost arising therefrom. Except for the occurrence of any of the matters described in Clause 28 or Clause 31 of this contract, Party B may not alter the content of the contract for any reason. If Party B fails to arrange the provision of meals, accommodation, transportation, excursions, or anything else according to the standard stipulated in this contract, Party A may claim compensation from Party B amounting to twice the difference in value as liquidated damages for breach of contract.

Clause 24: (Tourist Stranded Abroad Due to the Fault of the Travel Agency)

In the event that Party A is stranded abroad due to reason for which Party B can be held responsible, Party B shall be liable to defray the whole cost of meals, accommodation and other necessary expenditures incurred by Party A during the period of his being so stranded. Party B shall also as quickly as possible arrange tour activities in accordance with the scheduled itinerary or arrange for Party A to return home, and shall be liable to compensate Party A with liquidated damages for breach of contract computed as the total price of the tour divided by the total number of days of the tour and multiplied by the number of days of the stranding.

Clause 25: (Compensation for Loss Due to Delay in Itinerary)

In the event of a delay in the tour itinerary due to reason for which Party B can be held responsible, Party B shall be liable to cover Party A's expenses for meals and accommodation or other expenditure necessitated by the delay. Party A may also claim liquidated damages for breach of contract computed as the total price of the tour divided by the total number of days of the tour and multiplied by the number of days of the delay. But the total number of days of the delay may not exceed the total number of days of the tour, and a delay of five or more hours but less than a full day shall be counted as one day.

Clause 26: (Mala Fide Abandonment of Tourist Overseas)

If, after the commencement of tour activities, Party B, in bad faith, willfully or due to gross fault abandons or strands Party A overseas, Party B shall be liable to defray the whole cost of meals, accommodation, and return transportation, of the same grade as stipulated in

the tour contract, as well as other necessary expenditures incurred by Party A, during the period of his being so abandoned or stranded, and shall pay Party A compensation of five times the whole tour price as liquidated damages for breach of contract.

Clause 27: (Willful Cancellation of Contract by Tourist Prior to Departure)

Party A may prior to the commencement of the tour activities inform Party B of his cancellation of this contract, in which case Party A shall reimburse Party B for any costs incurred by the latter in handling passport or identification matters on his behalf, and shall also compensate party B as follows:

(1) Notification 31 or more days prior to the commencement of tour activities: 10 percent of the price of the tour as compensation.

(2) Notification between 21 days and 30 days prior to the commencement of tour activities: 20 percent of the price of the tour as compensation.

(3) Notification between 2 days and 20 days prior to the commencement of tour activities: 30 percent of the price of the tour as compensation.

(4) Notification 1 day prior to the commencement of tour activities: 50 percent of the price of the tour as compensation.

(5) Notification on the day of commencement of tour activities or after the commencement thereof or failure to notify of non-participation: 100 percent of the price of the tour as compensation.

Visa fees should be deducted from the cost of the tour before using it as the basis for computing compensation as provided for in the preceding paragraph.

If Party B can prove that his loss exceeded the amounts as computed according to the preceding paragraph, he may claim compensation equivalent to his actual loss.

Clause 28: (Cancellation of Contract by Reason of Law Prior to Departure)

In the event that it is not possible to perform the whole or a part of this contract due to force majeure or a reason for which neither party can be held responsible, the contract may be rescinded in whole or in part without either party being liable to compensate the other for any loss resulting therefrom. Party B shall refund the balance of payment made by Party A after deducting the whole of any expenditures made on Party A's behalf and any other expenditures necessarily incurred in performance of the contract. However, each party shall be obliged, upon obtaining knowledge of the impossibility of performing the tour activity, to promptly inform the other party and explain the reason therefor; and shall be liable to compensate the other for any loss sustained as a consequence of failing to so inform him.

To protect the safety and benefit of the tour to which this contract relates, after cancellation of a part of the contract in accordance with the provisions of the preceding paragraph, Party B shall make such necessary arrangements as are favorable to the tour. However, if Party A does not agree thereto, he may refuse to comply, and shall be liable to defray any costs incurred as a necessary consequence thereof.

Clause 28-1 (Cancellation of Contract Prior to Departure Because of Objective Risk)

In the event that, prior to departure, there is a real and recognized risk to tourists' life, limb, health or property in one of the scheduled destinations of the tour, then the contract may be cancelled in accordance with the provisions of the preceding clause. However, the party that so cancels the contract shall pay compensation of _____ percent of the tour price to the other party (the amount stipulated may not exceed five percent).

Clause 29: (Willful Termination of Contract by Tourist after Departure)

If, after the commencement of tour activities, Party A leaves the group and withdraws from tour activities, he may not claim reimbursement of the tour price from Party B. However, if Party B is able to save or need not make expenditure as a consequence of Party A's withdrawal from tour activities, Party B shall reimburse such saving to Party A.

If, after the commencement of tour activities, Party A is unable to participate in scheduled tour activities on time, or is unable to catch a plane, bus, boat or other form of transportation on time, he shall be deemed as having voluntarily given up his rights, and may not claim reimbursement or any compensation from Party B.

Clause 30: (Arrangement of Return Journey after Termination of Contract)

If, after the commencement of the tour activities, Party A terminates the contract by leaving the tour or withdrawing from the tour activities before their completion, or failing to comply with the action required by Party B for fulfillment of the tour, Party A may request Party B to temporarily defray the cost of transporting him (Party A) back to the tour departure point on the understanding that he (Party A) will subsequently reimburse Party B therefor. After his return, Party A shall promptly reimburse Party B for all such repatriation transport cost together with the payment of interest thereon at the rate of _____ percent per annum.

Party B may claim compensation from Party A for any loss it suffers as a result of the circumstances described in the preceding paragraph.

Clause 31: (Change in Itinerary, Meals, Accommodation, or Excursion Item During

the Tour)

If in the course of the tour, due to force majeure or for reason for which Party B can not be held responsible, it is impossible to fulfill the scheduled itinerary, meals, accommodation, excursions, etc. , then in order to protect the safety and interests of the tour group, Party B may change items of the itinerary or excursions or replace meals, accommodation or the itinerary, and if the cost of so doing exceeds the original cost, may not seek payment of the difference from Party A. However, if the change results in the saving of costs, then Party B shall refund the difference to Party A.

If Party A does not agree to the change in the itinerary as described in the preceding paragraph, he may terminate this contract, and may request Party B to temporarily defray the cost of transporting him back to the tour departure point on the understanding that he (Party A) will subsequently reimburse Party B therefor. After his return, Party A shall promptly reimburse Party B for all such repatriation transport cost together with the payment of interest thereon at the rate of _____ percent per annum.

Clause 32 : (Overseas Shopping)

If, for the shopping convenience of tour customers, Party B arranges for Party A to purchase gifts or souvenirs, such arrangement shall be recorded clearly in advance as part of the tour itinerary listed under Clause 3 of this contract, and if any of the goods purchased are not of a quality commensurate with their price or are flawed, Party A may request Party B to help him deal with the matter within one month of Party A's taking receipt of the said goods.

Party B may not for any reason or in any name request Party A to carry any item on its behalf on the homeward journey of the tour.

Clause 33 : (Attribution of Liability and Assistance)

In the event that during the course of the tour Party A suffers any harm or loss while traveling by airplane, ship, train, MRT, cable car, or any other form of public transport, for reasons for which Party B can not be held responsible, the operator of the transport service shall be directly liable to Party A for such harm or loss. Nevertheless, Party B shall give the utmost attention of a good manager to assisting Party A to deal with the situation.

Clause 34 : (Obligation to Assist)

In the event that Party A suffers a mishap to person or property in the course of the tour, Party B shall provide all necessary assistance in dealing therewith.

Where the aforementioned mishap results from a cause for which Party B can not be held

responsible, all expenses incurred in relation thereto shall be borne by Party A. Nevertheless, Party B shall give the utmost attention of a good manager to assisting Party A to deal with the situation.

Clause 35: (Good Faith Principle)

The two parties shall perform this contract in accordance with the principle of good faith. In the event that Party B has commissioned another travel agency to solicit business on its behalf in accordance with the provisions of the Regulations Governing Travel Agencies, it may not plead defense on the grounds of its not having received payment directly from Party A, or not having directly solicited Party A to participate in this tour, or its not being an actual signatory of this contract.

Clause 36: (Other Items of Agreement)

The two parties agree to abide by the following:

(1) Party A agrees / does not agree that Party B may provide his name to other members of the same tour group.

(2) If the items of agreement in the preceding paragraph constitute a change to the provisions of any other term or terms of this contract, they shall be invalid unless approved by the Tourism Bureau of _____, except insofar as they are favorable to Party A.

Contracting Parties:

Party A:

Address:

Identification Number:

Telephone or Fax:

Party B (Company Name):

Registration Number:

Responsible Person:

Address:

Telephone or Fax:

Countersignature of Travel Agency Sub-contracted by Party B:

(The following items need not be filled in if this contract is a self-arranged travel product signed between a consolidated or Class-A travel agency and a tour customer.)

(Company Name):

Registration Number:

Responsible Person:

Address:

Telephone or Fax:

Date of Signing: _____ Year _____ Month _____ Day

(If not recorded, the date of payment of the deposit shall be deemed as the date of signing.)

Place of Signing: _____

(If not recorded, the place of residence of Party A shall be deemed as the place of signing.)

References

- [1] EUGENE H J. The language of hotels in English. New York: Regents Publishing Company, Inc., 1976.
- [2] 房新海. 旅游英语. 北京: 高等教育出版社, 2002.
- [3] 赵淑华. 旅游服务英语. 北京: 旅游教育出版社, 1994.
- [4] 浙江广播电视大学《旅游英语》教材编写组. 旅游英语. 杭州: 浙江教育出版社, 1988.